

The Budapest for the Tournament Player

Mikhail Tseitlin
Igor Glaskov





The Budapest for the Tournament Player

The Budapest for the Tournament Player

Mikhail Tseitlin and
Igor Glaskov

Translated by John Sugden

B. T. Batsford Ltd, *London*

**First published 1992
(c) Tseitlin, Glaskov 1992**

ISBN 0 7134 6966 8

**British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data.
A catalogue record for this book is available from the
British Library.**

**All rights reserved. No part of this book may be
reproduced, by any means, without prior permission
of the publisher.**

**Typeset by B. B. Enterprises, Brighton
and printed in Great Britain by
Dotesios Ltd, Trowbridge, Wilts
for the publishers, B. T. Batsford Ltd,
4 Fitzhardinge Street, London W1H OAH**

**A BATSFORD CHESS BOOK
Adviser: R. D. Keene GM, OBE
Technical Editor: Andrew Kinsman**

Contents

	Preface	7
1	Early Deviations	11
2	3 ... ♘g4 4 e4	21
3	3 ... ♘g4 4 ♙f4	40
4	3 ... ♘g4 4 ♘f3	68
5	3 ... ♘e4	89
6	3 ... ♘e4 4 ♘f3 ♘c6	98
	Illustrative Games	111
	Index of Variations	142
	List of Illustrative Games	144

Preface

Fate is inscrutable. At the start of the international tournament in Berlin in 1918, the most likely winner was thought to be the Queen's Gambit expert Akiba Rubinstein, claimant to the world chess throne. And it just so happened that in the first round, the devious luck of the draw brought him together with Milan Vidmar

The young Yugoslav maestro was completely at a loss what to do. Shortly before the start, he met his friend the Hungarian Stephan Abonyi, and remarked: "I don't know *what* I'm going to play against Akiba."

"Play our gambit!" Abonyi replied with a smile, and he demonstrated to an astonished Vidmar the interesting novelty which some Hungarian players had devised. This is how the opening that was afterwards named the Budapest Gambit received its baptism of fire.

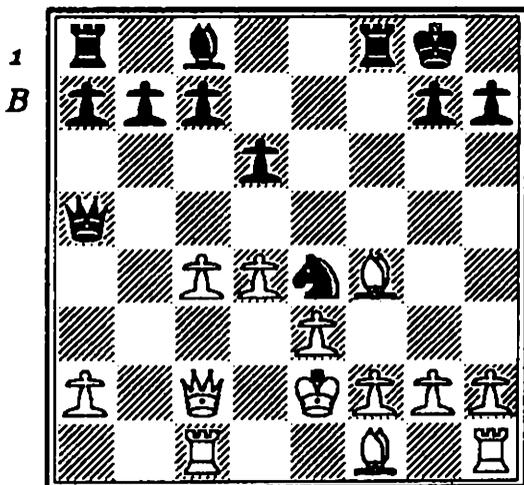
Rubinstein - Vidmar

Berlin 1918

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e5! 3 de ♘g4 4 ♚f4 ♘c6 5 ♘f3 ♚b4+ 6 ♘c3 ♜e7 7 ♜d5 ♚xc3+ 8 bc ♜a3 9 ♞c1 f6 10 ef ♘xf6 11 ♜d2 d6 12 ♘d4 0-0 13 e3?

Well, it is move thirteen!

13 ... ♘xd4 14 cd ♘e4 15 ♜c2 ♜a5+ 16 ♜e2 (1)



8 Preface

The ascent to Golgotha begins.

16 ... ♖xf4! 17 e5 ♕f5 18 ♜b2 ♜e8 19 ♜f3 ♘d2+

In his elation Vidmar doesn't notice that 19 ... h5! 20 g3 ♘d2+ 21 ♜g2 ♕e4+ would have won more simply.

20 ♜g3 ♘e4+ 21 ♜h4 ♜e6 22 ♕e2 ♜h6+ 23 ♕h5 ♖xh5+ 24 ♜xh5 ♕g6+ 0-1

No one before had ever beaten Rubinstein so crushingly! It was only natural that this sensational win (it duly went the rounds of the world chess press) put such heart into Vidmar that he finished first in the tournament. And Rubinstein? Demoralised by his defeat, he went on to lose to Mieses and draw with Schlechter in this very same opening.

A reliable defence to the queen's pawn opening is a fundamental requirement of chess. All the world's leading players had striven indefatigably to find one. In the course of time it was established that Black obtains equalising chances against the Queen's Gambit by preparing the pawn advance ... e5. It would seem that Stephan Abonyi was disinclined to waste time on lengthy preparations, and decided (such is the intransigence of youth!) to carry out this advance at once, with the incidental sacrifice of a pawn. He shared his idea with the masters Barasz and Julius Breyer, and together they worked out the first few variations of the gambit.

Information about the new-born gambit soon infiltrated the chess press. The games Esser - Breyer (Budapest 1916) and Helmar - Krejcik (Vienna 1917) became known. In the respected *Deutsche Schachzeitung* (1917, page 242), Karl Schlechter published one of his first analyses on the subject. For the moment, none of this was taken seriously by the chess public at large. And then came - in Schlechter's words - this "brilliant, truly stupendous success" in Berlin, at the highest level!

Everyone now took notice of the novelty. Not only a few adherents of hypermodernism with Savielly Tartakower at their head, but even the jealous guardian of classicism, Dr Siegbert Tarrasch, took this opening into their armoury. Shortly afterwards, Schlechter's monograph *The Budapest Defence to the Queen's Gambit* was published (Berlin 1919).

Subsequently the 'big names' had their say. Alekhine's brilliant and convincing wins against Rabinovich (Baden-Baden 1925) and Seitz (Hastings 1925/6), as well as Bogoljubow's theoretical treatment in his brochure *The Modern Queen's Pawn Opening*, appeared to establish beyond question that the Budapest Gambit was a dubious and precarious undertaking. By the end of the 1920s, the evaluation scheme for the main lines of the gambit looked like this:

- a) 4 e4 - White returns the pawn and obtains an attack.
- b) 4 Qf4 c6 5 f3 b4+ 6 c3 - White keeps the extra pawn with a good position; also after 6 bd2 he has a slight positional advantage.
- c) 4 f3 c6 5 e3 c5 - White has a small but secure plus.

For several decades this assessment stood as a psychological barrier to chessplayers.

However, there have always been players eager to lighten their theoretical load. The headaches of the standard lines in the Queen's Gambit and King's Indian, which in any case demand immense theoretical knowledge, are inimical to them ... In short, the work of perfecting the Budapest Gambit was continued. Every now and then, games and analyses casting doubt on the theoretical dogmas would start appearing again in print. But these scattered findings were never properly co-ordinated by anyone.

An analysis of games from the past decade suggests that the Budapest Gambit deserves much more attention than it has so far received. As a result of our investigations we have come to the conclusion that the evaluation scheme which lasted sixty years should now be replaced by something like this:

- a) 4 e4 - simple and reliable methods of defence have been discovered for Black.
- b) 4 Qf4 c6 5 f3 b4+ 6 c3 - Black has adequate compensation for the sacrificed pawn; or safe equality in the case of 6 bd2 .
- c) 4 f3 c6 5 e3 c5 - Black not only succeeds in defending; in several cases he can go over to the attack.

In submitting their work to the reader's judgement, the authors wish to express their hope that players who

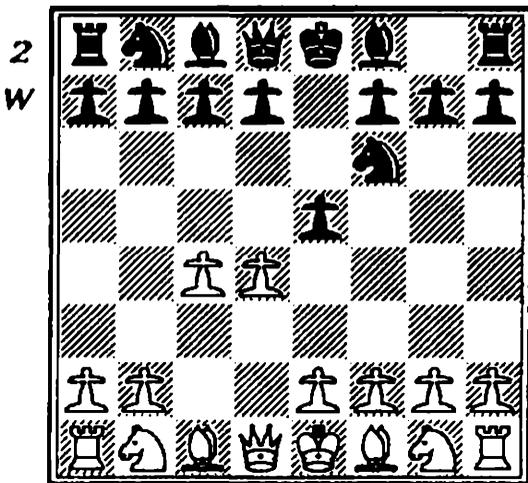
10 *Preface*

adopt the rejuvenated Budapest Gambit will be enriching their opening repertoire and ultimately serving the further progress of chess art.

**M.S. Tseitlin
I.B. Glaskov**

1) Early Deviations

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e5 (2)



3 de

The pawn sacrifice should be accepted, since otherwise the advantages of Black's early strike against the centre make themselves felt. For example:

a) 3 e4 ♘xe4 4 de ♙c5 5 ♘h3 (if 5 ♚d5, then 5 ... ♙xf2+ 6 ♚e2 f5) 5 ... d6 6 ♚e2 f5 (this would also be the answer to 6 ♚d5) 7 ef 0-0! 8 fg ♖e8 9 ♙e3 ♙xe3 10 fe ♙xh3, and Black will easily gain a decisive advantage (Schlechter).

b) 3 ♙g5 ed 4 ♚xd4 ♙e7 5 ♘f3 ♘c6 6 ♚d1 occurred in Ladmann - Tartakower,

Scarborough 1929. Play continued 6 ... ♘e4 7 ♙xe7 ♚xe7 8 a3 d6, and after 9 e3 (9 g3 was a little better) 9 ... 0-0 10 ♙e2 ♚f6 11 ♘bd2 ♙f5, Black obtained the better chances.

c) 3 ♘f3, and now:

c1) Menchik - Tartakower, Paris 1929, went 3 ... e4 4 ♘fd2 d5 5 cd (better was 5 e3) 5 ... ♚xd5 6 e3 ♙b4 7 ♘c3 ♙xc3 8 bc 0-0, and White began to experience distinct problems with her development. After 9 ♚b3 (9 ♙e2 ♚g5 10 0-0 is no good in view of 10 ... ♙h3) 9 ... ♚g5 10 ♙a3 ♖e8 11 g3 b6 12 ♙g2 ♙a6 13 c4 ♘c6 14 ♚c3 ♖ad8 15 0-0 h5, there is no doubt of Black's superiority.

c2) Schlechter recommends 3 ... ed 4 ♘xd4 d5 5 cd ♚xd5 6 ♘c3 ♙b4 7 ♚a4+ ♘c6 8 ♘xc6 (Black also has the better prospects after 8 ♚xb4 ♘xb4 9 ♘xd5 ♘fxd5) 8 ... ♙xc3+ 9 bc ♙d7, with the advantage.

d) 3 d5 ♙c5 (3 ... ♙b4+ 4 ♙d2 ♙xd2+ 5 ♘xd2 d6 is

12 Early Deviations

worth considering) 4 $\Delta c3$ d6, and now:

d1) 5 e4 c6 6 $\Delta f3$ cd 7 cd 0-0 8 $\underline{Q}d3$ $\Delta bd7$ 9 0-0 a6 10 h3 $\Delta e8$ (or 10 ... b5 followed by ... $\Delta b6$ and $\underline{Q}d7$), and with a subsequent ... g6, ... $\Delta g7$ and ... f5, Black gains the advantage (Kwiatkowski).

d2) A game A Atanasov - V Atanasov, Bulgaria 1955, took a different course: 5 $\text{♙}c2$ c6 6 $\Delta f3$ (6 g3 can be met by 6 ... cd 7 cd $\Delta a6$ 8 a3 0-0 9 $\underline{Q}g2$ b5 10 b4 $\underline{Q}d4!$ 11 e3 $\underline{Q}f5$, or 11 $\underline{Q}b2$ $\Delta c7$, and Black has the initiative) 6 ... 0-0 7 $\underline{Q}g5$ $\Delta bd7$ 8 e3 $\text{♙}c7$ 9 $\underline{Q}d3$ h6 10 $\underline{Q}h4$ $\underline{Q}b4$ 11 e4?! (an improvement would be 11 dc bc 12 0-0 $\underline{Q}b7$) 11 ... cd 12 cd $\Delta xe4!$ (White had obviously not suspected this possibility) 13 $\underline{Q}xe4$ f5 14 $\underline{Q}xf5$ $\text{♞}xf5$ 15 $\text{♙}xf5$ $\underline{Q}xc3+$ 16 $\Delta d2$ (White also stands badly after 16 bc $\text{♙}xc3+$ 17 $\text{♞}e2$ $\Delta c5$ 18 $\text{♙}b1$ e4) 16 ... $\Delta c5$ 17 $\text{♙}c2$ $\underline{Q}xb2$ 18 $\text{♞}b1$ $\underline{Q}d4$ 19 0-0 $\text{♙}f7$, with a clear advantage.

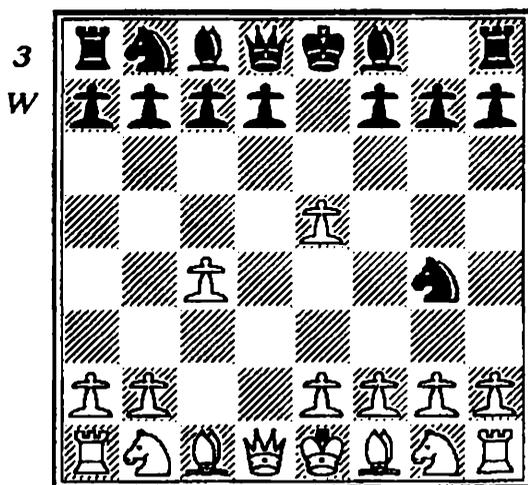
e) 3 e3 ed (Black may also opt for a more complex game with 3 ... d6 4 $\Delta c3$ $\Delta bd7$ 5 $\Delta f3$ $\underline{Q}e7$) 4 ed $\underline{Q}b4+$ (4 ... d5 transposes into the exchange variation of the French Defence which is comfortable for Black) 5 $\underline{Q}d2$ $\underline{Q}xd2+$ 6 $\Delta xd2$ 0-0 7 $\underline{Q}d3$, and after 7 ... d5

8 $\Delta e2$ $\underline{Q}g4$ 9 0-0 $\Delta c6$ 10 f3 $\underline{Q}h5$, Black obtained the better chances in Vistanet-skis - Vajda, Prague 1931.

Thus, however paradoxical it may seem, declining the pawn is more risky than taking it.

3 ... $\Delta g4$ (3)

Recommended by the originator of the gambit, Stephan Abonyi, this is Black's commonest reply. Fajarowicz's system, 3 ... $\Delta e4$, is examined in chapters 5 and 6.



From this starting point White has a wide choice of continuations. The most usual of these - 4 e4, 4 $\underline{Q}f4$ and 4 $\Delta f3$ - will be considered in chapters 2, 3 and 4 respectively.

In the present chapter, we shall look in detail at three alternatives:

- A 4 e6
- B 4 $\text{♙}d5$
- C 4 $\text{♙}d4$

We should also note the following:

a) In Weber - Winkler, corr. 1988, White played an interesting counter-sacrifice of a pawn: 4 ♖c3 ♖xe5 5 ♕f4 ♖xc4 (Black accepts the challenge instead of playing the safe 5 ... ♖bc6) 6 e4 ♖b6 (of course not 6 ... ♖xb2 7 ♖d2!) 7 ♖c2 ♕b4, and after 8 0-0-0 c6 9 ♖f3 0-0 10 ♕d6 ♕xd6 11 ♖xd6 ♖e7 12 e5, he obtained a very promising position. However, in our view, Black can improve on 7 ... ♕b4 with 7 ... d6 8 0-0-0 ♕e7, when the onus is on White to prove the correctness of his idea.

b) 4 e3 ♖xe5, and now:

b1) 5 ♖f3 ♕b4+ 6 ♕d2 ♕xd2+ 7 ♖bxd2 ♖bc6 led to equality in Döry - Tartakower, Vienna 1928. However White can improve with 6 ♖bd2! ♖bc6 7 a3, gaining a small plus. Therefore instead of 5 ... ♕b4+, Black should play 5 ... ♖bc6, transposing to variations we examine in chapter 4.

b2) In Baginskaite - Stroe, Vilnius 1986, White tried the novel 5 ♖h3!?. Play continued 5 ... ♕b4+ 6 ♕d2 ♕xd2+ 7 ♖xd2 d6 (it would be interesting to try 7 ... b6) 8 ♖f4 0-0 9 ♖c3 ♕e6 10 b3 ♖bd7 (10 ... ♖bc6

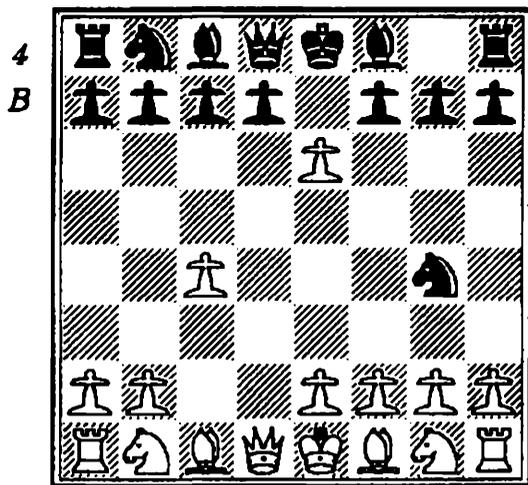
is more natural) 11 ♕e2 ♖b6? 12 0-0 ♖d7 13 ♖ad1 ♖ad8 14 ♖b2 ♖e7 15 ♖b5 a6 16 ♖d4, and White obtained a clear advantage. In place of 11 ... ♖b6? Black could have maintained the balance with 11 ... ♖g6, or 11 ... a6 12 0-0 ♖h4.

c) For 4 f4, see *Illustrative Game No. 1* (Helmar - Krejcik).

A

4 e6 (4)

Prescribed by Dr. Tarrasch.



4 ... de

Considered best, but Black also has these alternatives:

a) Rasin - Ivanov, Leningrad 1978 went 4 ... ♕b4+ 5 ♕d2 ♖f6 6 ef+ ♖xf7 7 ♖f3 ♖xb2 8 ♕xb4 ♖xb4+ 9 ♖bd2 ♖e8 (9 ... ♖f8 is also playable) 10 e3 ♖e7 11 h3 ♖e5?!, giving White the chance to obtain an active position with 12 ♖xe5+ ♖xe5 13 ♕d3 g6 14 0-0 ♖c6 15 ♖h1 ♖g7 16

14 Early Deviations

♖b1. However, instead of 11 ... ♗e5, Black should have preferred 11 ... ♗f6 with a perfectly sound position.

b) The other recapture, 4 ... fe, is playable. There can follow 5 e4 ♗e5, and now:

b1) Seitz - Vajda, Gyor 1924, continued 6 ♖h5+ ♗f7 7 ♕d2 g6 8 ♖f3 ♕g7 9 ♕c3 e5, and now White could have seized the initiative with 10 h4!. Instead of 7 ... g6 it was worth considering 7 ... ♖f6 8 ♕c3 ♖g5 9 ♖d1 ♕e7, with chances for both sides.

b2) 6 ♗h3 ♗f7 7 ♗c3 ♕b4 also gives White nothing to speak of. For example 8 ♕d2 e5 9 ♕e2 0-0 10 0-0 ♗c6 11 ♕e3 d6 12 ♕g4 ♕xc3 13 bc b6, Szekely - Steiner, Budapest 1928; or 8 ♕e2 0-0 9 0-0 ♕xc3 10 bc b6 11 f4 ♕b7 12 ♕d3 e5, Szekely - Havasi, Budapest 1932. In both cases the game is about level.

5 ♖xd8+ ♗xd8

6 ♗c3

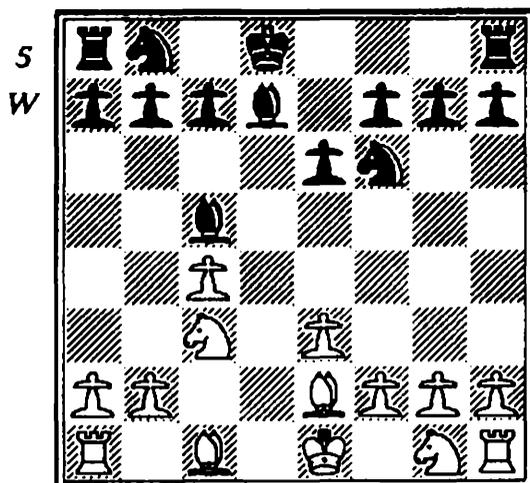
After 6 h3 ♗e5 7 e4 ♗a6 8 ♗c3, a game Krisnik - Tartakower, Yugoslavia 1952, continued 8 ... ♕b4 9 ♕d2 ♖e7 10 a3 ♕c5 11 f4 ♗c6 12 b4 ♕xg1 13 ♖xg1 ♗d4 14 ♖a2 c5, with equal chances.

6 ... ♕c5

6 ... ♕b4 is answered by 7 ♕d2. If then 7 ... c6, White gains a clear advantage

with 8 h3 ♗f6 9 a3 ♕e7 10 0-0-0 ♗bd7 11 ♕f4. If 7 ... f6, then 8 a3 ♕xc3 9 ♕xc3, and again White has the better prospects.

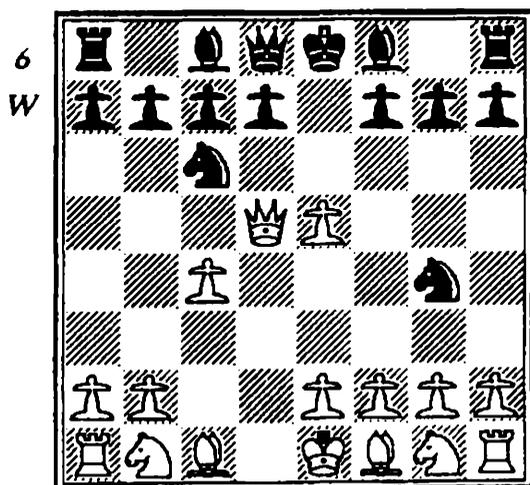
7 e3 ♕d7
8 ♕e2 ♗f6 (5)



A game Miklo - Wiesel, Budapest 1931, continued 9 ♗f3 ♗c6 10 0-0 a6 (10 ... a5 at once is simpler) 11 a3 a5 12 b3 ♖e7 13 ♗b5 ♖hc8 14 ♕b2 ♗a7 15 ♗c3 ♖d8, with an even game.

B

4 ♖d5 ♗c6 (6)



5 f4

With this move the variation acquires independent

significance. There is no doubt that 5 Qf4 Qb4+ 6 c3 is better, transposing to chapter 3, variation B1.

Instead, 5 f3 leads to these possibilities:

a) Schlechter recommended the gambit continuation 5 ... d6! 6 ed Qe6 7 d1 Qxd6 8 e3 f6 , or 6 Qg5 Qe7 7 Qxe7 f7 8 e4 de , intending ... d1+ and ... xf2+ . With 9 c3 White parries this threat, but after 9 ... f5 10 c2 d6 Black obtains the better prospects.

b) A playable alternative is 5 ... Qb4+ 6 c3 e7 7 Qf4 transposing to chapter 3, since 7 Qg5 seems to be well answered by 7 ... f6! 8 ef Qxc3+ 9 bc xf6 with adequate compensation for the pawn.

5 f4 lets Black obtain excellent prospects. We shall now follow Schlechter's analysis.

5 ... b4
6 e4

There is nothing better, since 6 d2 is met by 6 ... e3! , while on 6 d1 Black continues 6 ... c5! 7 h3 hx2! 8 hx2 h4+ which leads to a win after 9 g3 hg3+ 10 f2 d6 11 b3 Qxf2+ 12 xf2 xb3 13 ab c2+ , or 9 d2 g3 10 h1 Qe3+ 11 c3 Qxc1+ 12 xb4 Qxb2 .

6 ... c5

7 h3

On 7 e3 ? Black has 7 ... xe3 .

7 ... O-O

8 c3

Essential in view of the threatened 8 ... f5 9 ef xf6 , which could also be the answer to 8 g5 . The text move frees b1 for the white queen.

8 ... f5

9 ef

After 9 b1 d6 10 a3 c6 11 ed xd6 , White has serious problems with his development.

9 ... xf6

10 b1 d5!

Threatening 11 ... Qxh3 .

11 a3 c6

12 cd xd5

13 a2

If 13 xd5 xd5 14 a2 , then 14 ... xa2 15 xa2 Qe6 16 a1 d4 .

13 ... Qe6

Black has a fine game; all his minor pieces are taking part in his attack.

14 g5

If 14 e4 , Black continues 14 ... xf4 15 c4 xg2+ 16 e2 d4+ .

14 ... Qf2+!

15 Qxf2 hxg5

16 xd5

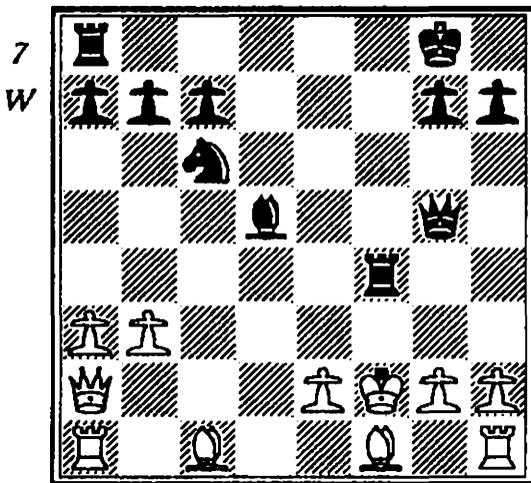
The threat was 16 ... xf4 . If 16 e4 , then 16 ... e5 .

16 ... Qxd5

16 Early Deviations

17 b3 ♖xf4+ (7)

A highly promising exchange sacrifice. (The same move could have been the answer to 17 ♖b1.) We should add that Black may also choose the less committal 17 ... ♘d4 or 17 ... ♖ae8.



Schlechter now gives:

a) 18 ♖g1 ♖xf1+.

b) 18 ♖e1 ♖h4+ 19 g3 ♖xf1+ 20 ♖xf1 ♖xh2 21 ♖f4 ♖g2 22 g4 ♖h4+ 23 ♖f2 ♖f8.

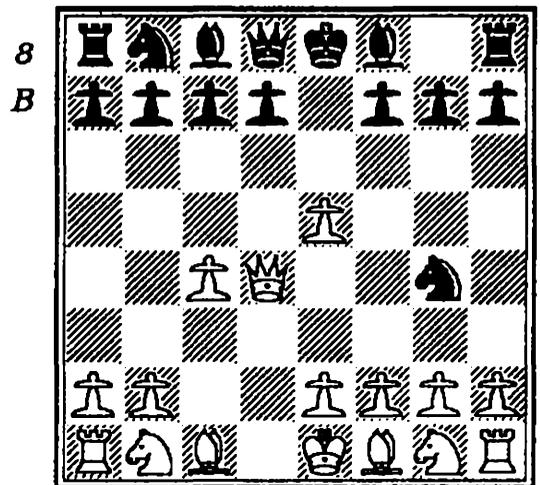
c) 18 ♖xf4 ♖xf4+ 19 ♖e1 ♖f8, or 19 ... ♘d4, with a powerful attack.

C

4 ♖d4 (8)

Just as in the foregoing variation, the early queen sortie cannot be satisfactory. This applies all the more so since White will be forced to lose a tempo moving the queen again.

We shall now look in detail at two replies:



C1 4 ... h5

C2 4 ... d6

C1

4 ... h5

5 ♘f3

On 5 f4 Black obtains a fine game with 5 ... ♘c6 6 ♖d5 ♘b4 etc., by analogy with variation B.

In a game Kashkarov - Glaskov, Moscow 1971, White tried 5 h3 ♘c6 6 ♖e4 ♘gxe5! 7 f4 ♖h4+ 8 ♖d1 ♖f2 9 ♘f3 f5! with a clear plus for Black.

5 ... ♘c6

6 ♖d5

6 ♖e4 ♖b4+ 7 ♘c3 ♖e7 is good for Black.

6 ... ♖b4+

7 ♘c3 ♖e7

8 ♖f4

The position that has arisen is similar to one which we discuss in chapter 3 (variation B1). Here Black has the extra move ... h7-h5, which in several variations comes in useful.

If 8 Qg5 , then 8 ... Qxc3+
 9 bc Ka3 .

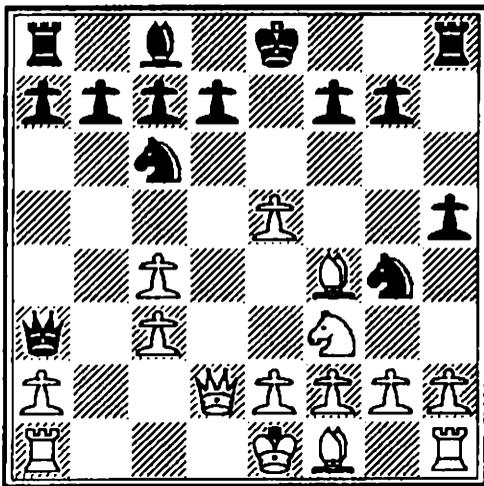
8 ... Qxc3+

In addition to the text move, Black has 8 ... b6. A game Esser - Breyer, Budapest 1916, then continued: 9 h3 Ah6 10 Rc1 Qb7 11 a3 (11 e3 at once looks better) 11 ... Qxc3+ 12 bc 0-0-0 13 e3 Rdg8! 14 Qg5 f6 15 ef gf 16 Qxh6 Ae5 and Black gained the advantage.

9 bc Ka3

10 Kd2 (9)

Forestalling ... Kb2 . Note that 10 Rc1 , which occurs in the similar variation in chapter 3, is ineffective here, in view of the simple capture on a2.



10 ... Ka5

This move is not considered in theoretical treatises. In addition to the text, it is worth considering 10 ... b6, on the lines of Esser - Breyer, while 10 ... Ke7 11 Kd5 Ka3 repeats the position.

Schlechter recommends

10 ... Kc5 11 e3 and only then 11 ... Ka5 , which amounts to a vital loss of tempo in comparison with our main line. White has various ways of gaining the advantage, for example: 12 Rb1 (12 Qe2 is also good) 12 ... a6 13 c5 (another quite attractive line is 13 Ad4 Agxe5 14 Ab3 Ka3 15 c5 a5 16 Qxe5 Axe5 17 Kd4 f6 18 Ac1 0-0 19 Qe2 , with advantage) 13 ... Kxc5 14 h3 (14 e6 is also sufficient: 14 ... Ad8 15 ef+ Axf7 16 Qe2 0-0 17 0-0 d6 18 Kd4 , with the better prospects) 14 ... Ad6 (14 ... Agxe5 is met by 15 Axe5 Axe5 16 Kd4) 15 e4 (15 Qd3 b6 16 0-0 Qb7 17 Qg5 Ae7 leads to an unclear position) 15 ... b6 16 Rd1 Ke7 17 Qc4 f6 18 Qd5 , with a clear plus (analysis by the authors).

11 e3

In this position 11 Rb1 is less strong. For example, 11 ... a6 12 Ad4 (12 c5 is pointless, since with 12 ... Kxc5 Black attacks f2) 12 ... Agxe5 13 Ab3 Ka3 14 c5 a5 15 Qxe5 Axe5 16 Kd4 f6 17 Ac1 Ra6 (e2-e3 hasn't been played yet!), and after the inevitable ... Rc6 White loses a pawn.

11 ... Agxe5

12 Axe5 Axe5

13 Kd4

If 13 c5, then 13 ... Ag6 .

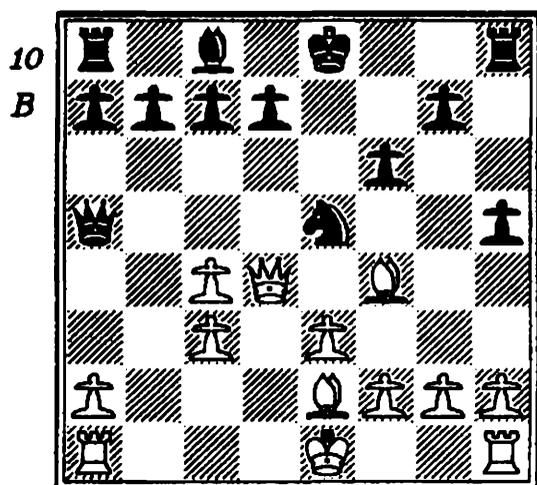
18 Early Deviations

13 ... f6

13 ... d6 is weak on account of 14 c5 (appropriate in this case) 14 ... 0-0 (or 14 ... ♖g6 15 cd ♖xf4 16 ef) 15 cd cd 16 ♕e2.

14 ♕e2 (10)

On 14 c5 ♖c6, threatening ... g5, White loses material.



In this position, 14 ... ♖g6 is a mistake in view of 15 0-0 ♖xf4 16 ef ♖f7 17 ♕f3, with the better game for White. 14 ... g5 15 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 16 ♖d3 is also unsatisfactory. However, by continuing 14 ... d6 15 0-0 (15 ♕xe5 ♖xe5) 15 ... ♕d7, or 14 ... ♖c6 15 ♖d3 (after 15 ♖e4+? ♖d8 16 0-0 g5 17 ♖g6 ♖f8, White loses a piece) 15 ... ♖f7, Black secures equal chances (analysis by the authors).

C2

4 ... d6

This aggressive continuation was suggested by Schlechter in *Deutsche*

Schachzeitung (1917, p. 242).

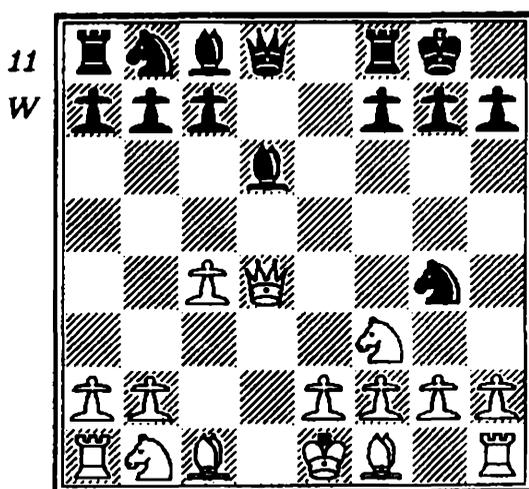
5 ed ♕xd6

Intending to answer 6 ♖xg7 with 6 ... ♕e5. Apart from the text, Black has 5 ... ♖c6 6 ♖d1 ♕xd6, when 7 ♖f3?? fails to 7 ... ♖xf2! 8 ♖xf2 ♕g3+ winning the queen, while 7 e3 0-0 will transpose to the main line.

6 ♖f3

(Ed: A recent game, Beliavsky - Epishin, Reggio Emilia 1990/91, continued instead with 6 ♖e4+ ♕e6 7 ♖c3 0-0 8 ♖f3 ♖d7 9 ♖d4 ♕xc4 10 ♖db5 ♕e6 11 ♖xd6 cd 12 g3 d5 13 ♖f4 d4 14 ♖e4 ♕d5 15 f3 f5 16 ♖c5 ♖e7 17 ♖d3 ♖c6 18 h3 ♖ge5 19 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 20 ♖f2 d3 21 ♕d2 de 22 ♕xe2 ♕xf3 23 ♕b4 ♖e6 24 ♖he1 ♕xe2 25 ♖e3 f4 and White resigned.)

6 ... 0-0 (11)



7 e3

7 ♖c3 ♖c6 8 ♖d1 ♕e6 9 e3 amounts to a transposition. A game Kobe - Gorges, Strobeck 1985, went 7 a3 ♖c6 8 ♖d1?? - and Black

failed to notice the immediate win with 8 ... ♖xf2!

7 h3 is also unsatisfactory; in Laszlo - Abonyi, Budapest 1933, there followed 7 ... ♖c6 8 ♜e4 ♞e8 9 ♜c2 ♖b4 10 ♜c3, when Black could have decided the game in his favour with 10 ... ♖d3+!. Apart from 7 ... ♖c6 the move 7 ... ♖e5 is also good. Barton - Makeberry, Malta Olympiad 1980, continued 8 ♖bd2 ♖bc6 9 ♜c3 ♖b4 10 ♜c2 ♖xf3+ 11 gf ♖d4 12 ♜d3 ♜f6 13 ♖g2 ♞e8 14 e4 ♖e6 15 0-0 ♞ad8 16 ♖b3, and after 16 ... ♖xh3 17 f4 ♖xg2 18 ♜xg2 ♜g6+ Black obtained an irresistible attack.

- 7 ... ♖c6
- 8 ♜d1 ♖e6
- 9 ♖c3 ♜e7
- 10 ♖d5

10 ♖e2 is well answered by 10 ... ♞ad8 (Schlechter) 11 ♖d5 (or 11 ♖d2 ♖b4) 11 ... ♖xd5 12 cd ♖b4+ (12 ... ♖ce5! is even more convincing - compare with the main line) 13 ♖d2 (13 ♖d2 is no good on account of ♖xe3! 14 fe ♞xd5, followed by ... ♞fd8) 13 ... ♞xd5 with the initiative.

The text move, which has not been considered by theory, also fails to get White out of trouble.

- 10 ... ♖xd5

A line with independent

significance is 10 ... ♖b4+ 11 ♖xb4 (for 11 ♖d2 ♖xd5 12 cd, see note 'b' to Black's eleventh move) 11 ... ♜xb4+ 12 ♖d2 (if 12 ♜d2, then in addition to 12 ... ♞fd8 Black has 12 ... ♖xc4 13 ♜xb4 ♖xb4 14 ♖xc4 ♖c2+, with advantage) 12 ... ♞ad8 13 ♖e2 (if 13 a3, then 13 ... ♜c5 14 ♖e2 ♖ge5 15 b4 ♜d6) 13 ... ♖ge5 14 b3 (or 14 ♜c2 ♜d6) 14 ... ♖d3+ 15 ♖xd3 ♞xd3, with enough compensation for the pawn.

- 11 cd

It is clear that 11 ♜xd5 is unplayable on account of 11 ... ♖b4+, with 12 ... ♞ad8 to follow.

- 11 ... ♖ce5!

We should note:

a) The combination 11 ... ♞ad8 12 dc ♖xf2 is unsound, since after 13 ♜xf2 ♖g3+ 14 ♜e2 ♞xd1 15 ♜xd1 ♞d8+ 16 ♖d2 ♖d6 17 cb, White has more than enough for the queen.

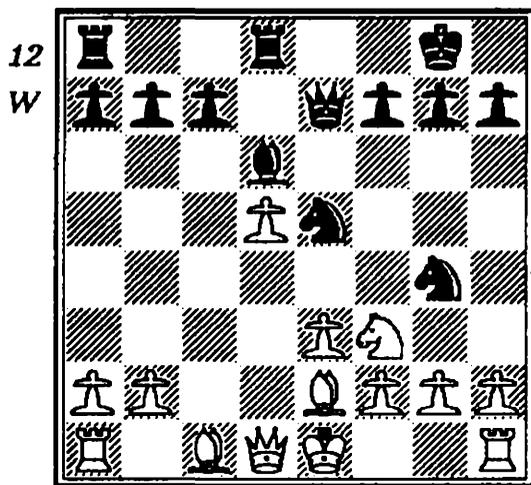
b) After 11 ... ♖b4+ 12 ♖d2 ♖ce5 13 ♖xb4! ♜xb4+ 14 ♜d2 ♜xd2+ 15 ♖xd2 ♞ae8 (on 15 ... ♞ad8, White keeps his extra pawn with 16 h3 ♖f6 17 e4 ♞fe8 18 0-0-0), Black's counterplay is only sufficient for equality. For example, 16 ♖c4 ♞d8 17 ♞d1 ♞d7! 18 ♖e2 ♖xc4 19 ♖xg4 f5 20 ♖f3 ♞fd8, or 16 ♖f3 ♞d8 17 ♞d1 ♞d7 18 ♖e2 ♖xf3+.

20 Early Deviations

12 Qe2 Rfd8! (12)

12 ... Qb4+ 13 Qd2 Rfd8
 gives no more than equality: 14 O-O c6 15 Exe5 Exe5
 16 e4 cd 17 ed Kc5 18 Rc1
 Ka5 19 Qxb4 Kxb4 20 Rc2
 Ka5 21 f4 Ng6 22 Qc4 Ne7 ,
 etc.

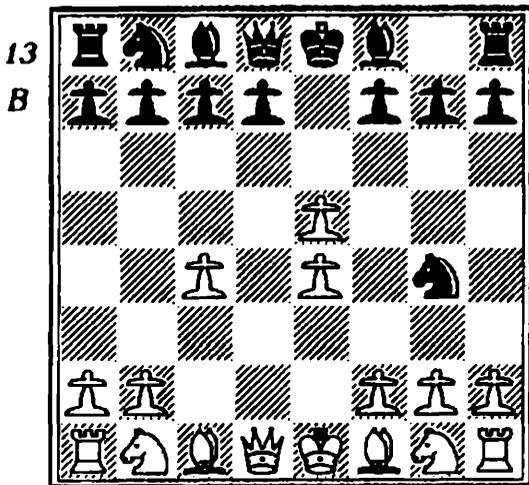
In this position Black has excellent attacking possibilities in return for the pawn. For example, 13 h3 is met by 13 ... Qb4+ 14 Qd2 (14 Qd2 Exe3 , followed by ... Rxd5) 14 ... Exf3+ 15 gf Exe3 , while if 13 a3 , then 13



... Exf3+ (13 ... $\text{c6!?$) 14 gf Exf6 . In both cases Black has a clear plus (authors' analysis).

2) 3 ... ♘g4 4 e4

- 1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♘g4
 4 e4 (13)



"This is considered with good reason to be White's best system against the Budapest Gambit. White hands the pawn back, but in return gains control of d5. Over the next few moves, however, he has to play with extreme precision, since otherwise his central pawn position may become the object of a successful attack by Black."

In our own day it is hard to agree with this categorical assessment by Alekhine. Given accurate play, practice shows that Black

possesses all the requirements for obtaining a satisfactory position.

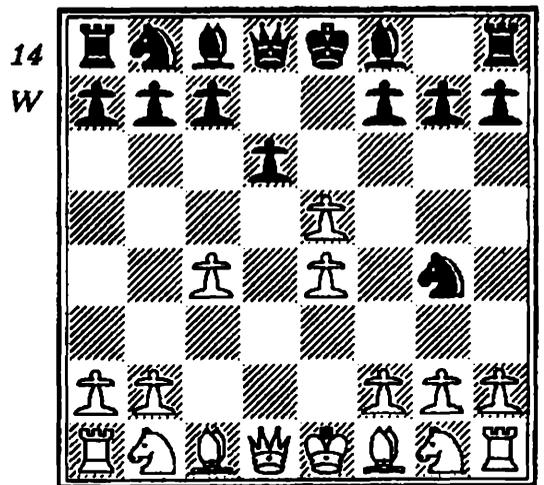
We will look at the consequences of three replies:

- A 4 ... d6
 B 4 ... h5
 C 4 ... ♘xe5

A

4 ... d6 (14)

A risky gambit line, recommended by Savielly Tartakower.



5 ed

White has some other possibilities apart from this sound reply. For example, *ECO* recommends 5 ♘f3 ♘c6 6 ♘c3. However, 5 ... ♘xe5! is better than 5

... ♗c6, and gives good chances of equality.

A good continuation is 5 ♗e2 ♗xe5 (for 5 ... h5 6 ed ♗xd6, see the main line, note to Black's 6th move) 6 f4. White clearly emphasises that 4 ... d6 was premature. Tournament practice has shown that Black can scarcely count on equality, for example:

a) 6 ... ♗g4 7 ♗f3 ♗c6 8 0-0 ♗d7 9 ♗c3 ♗e7 10 h3 ♗f6, and after 11 e5! de 12 fe ♗g8 13 ♗e3 f6 14 ♗d3! White obtained an irresistible attack in Reshevsky - Denker, Syracuse 1934.

b) 6 ... ♗g6 7 ♗f3 ♗c6 8 0-0 ♗e7 9 ♗c3 0-0 10 ♗e3 ♗e8 11 ♗d2 ♗f6 12 ♗d4 ♗d7 13 ♗ae1 ♗xd4 14 ♗xd4 ♗c6 15 ♗d1, and White's position clearly deserves preference; Katajisto - de Greiff, Amsterdam Olympiad 1954.

c) 6 ... ♗ec6 7 ♗f3 ♗e7 (7 ... g6 can be met by 8 ♗d2 ♗g7 9 ♗c3) 8 ♗c3 0-0 9 ♗d5 ♗d7 10 0-0 ♗c5 11 e5 ♗e8 12 b4 ♗d7 13 b5 ♗cb8 14 ♗a3, with a clear plus; Fomin - Miasnikov, USSR 1955. In a game Ulvestad - Haro, Malaga 1965, opted for 8 ... ♗g4 (instead of 8 ... 0-0) 9 0-0 ♗d7, but after 10 h3 ♗xf3 11 ♗xf3 0-0 12 ♗e3 ♗b6 13 b3 ♗f6 14 ♗d2 ♗e7 15 ♗ad1 White obtained a big advantage.

5 ... ♗xd6

6 ♗e2

The alternatives 6 h3 ♗h4 and 6 ♗f3 ♗b4+! 7 ♗d2 ♗c5 turn out in Black's favour.

6 ... f5

Another possibility we should consider is 6 ... h5 7 ♗f3 ♗c6 8 ♗c3 ♗e6, and now:

a) In Pomar - Myers, Lugano 1968, White continued with 9 ♗b5, which was met by 9 ... ♗b4+ 10 ♗d2 ♗c5 11 0-0 a6 12 ♗c3 ♗ce5 13 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 14 ♗f4, and now Black could have equalised with 14 ... ♗xc4.

b) In an earlier game, Christoffel - Stahlberg, Sweden 1928, White played more convincingly: 9 h3! ♗ge5 10 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 11 ♗e3, keeping the extra pawn with a good position.

7 ef

A game Geshev - Toshev, Sofia 1933, saw 7 ♗xg4 fg 8 ♗e3, and after 8 ... ♗e7 9 ♗c3 0-0 10 ♗ge2 ♗c6 Black obtained enough compensation for the pawn.

7 ... ♗e7

8 c5!

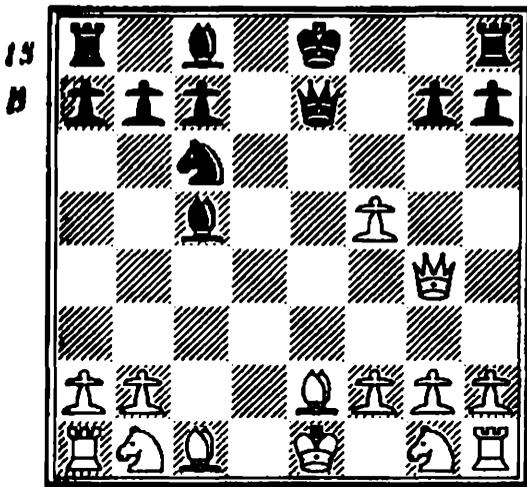
For 8 ♗f3, see *Illustrative Game No. 2* (Capablanca - Tartakower).

8 ... ♗xc5

9 ♗a4+ ♗c6

10 ♗xg4 (15)

Tartakower considered



that in this position Black has adequate compensation for the sacrificed piece, but analysis shows that this verdict is, to say the least, optimistic. For instance:

a) 10 ... ♕xf5 11 ♖xf5 ♗f8 12 ♕g5 ♗xf5 13 ♕xe7 ♕xf2+ 14 ♖d1 (Nimzowitsch).

b) 10 ... ♗d4 11 ♖h5+ ♖f8 (11 ... ♖d7 12 f6 gf 13 ♖f1 doesn't help Black either) 12 f6! gf 13 ♕h6+ ♖g8 14 ♖c3 ♗c2+ 15 ♖d2 ♗xa1 16 ♕c4+ ♕e6 17 ♖xc5! (Nimzowitsch).

c) 10 ... 0-0 (this line, originating from Balogh and approved by Euwe, is no better than the foregoing ones) 11 ♕g5 ♖e5 12 ♖c4+ ♖h8 13 ♗f3 ♖xb2 14 ♖xc5 (analysis by the authors).

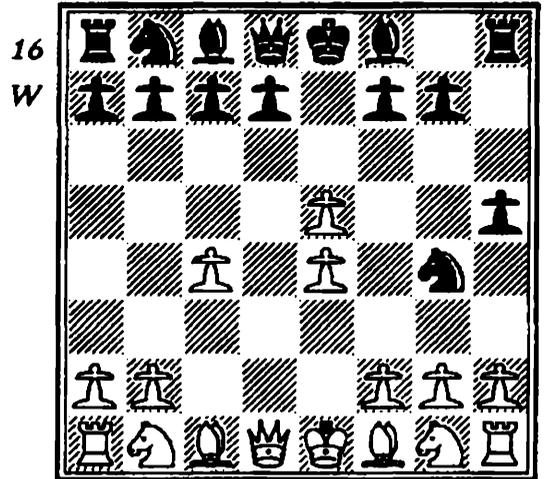
In all cases Black is left with no compensation for the material deficit.

B

4 ... h5 (16)

Recommended by Richard

Réti. However, this tactically unjustified stroke weakens the kingside and amounts to a waste of tempo.



5 ♕e2

Simplest. Note also:

a) 5 h3 ♗xe5 6 ♕e3 ♖b4+ 7 ♗d2 b6, and the position remains unclear.

b) Bogoljubow's continuation is worth considering: 5 ♗h3 ♗xe5 (Tartakower's 5 ... d6 is well answered by 6 ♕g5) 6 ♗c3 d6 7 ♗f4 ♗bc6 8 ♕e2 (on 8 ♗xh5, Spielmann recommended 8 ... ♖h4 9 ♗g3 ♕g4 with counterplay) 8 ... g6 9 0-0! ♕g7. A game Sämisch - Spielmann, Copenhagen 1923, now continued 10 ♖h1 ♗g4 11 ♖e1! ♗d4 12 ♕d1 ♕e5 13 h3 c6. At first sight Black seems to have achieved a good position, but this is an illusion. After 14 ♗d3 ♕e6 15 b3 ♕g7 16 f4, White gained a clear plus.

c) Another promising line is 5 ♗c3 ♗c6 6 ♗h3,

24 3 ... ♖g4 4 e4

and now:

c1) Bogoljubow - Prokes, Pistyan 1922, went 6 ... d6 7 ♗g5 ♜d7 8 ed ♗xd6 9 ♗e2 f6 10 ♗f4 ♖ce5 11 f3 ♖h6 12 ♗e3 ♜f7 13 ♖f4! with advantage to White.

c2) 6 ... ♗c5 is also insufficient: Euwe - Mieses, Hastings 1923/4, continued 7 ♖d5 ♖gxe5 (if 7 ... ♖cxe5, then 8 b4 ♗e7 9 ♗b2) 8 ♗g5 f6 9 ♗e3 d6 10 ♖hf4 ♗g4 11 ♗e2 ♜d7 12 f3 ♗xe3 13 ♖xe3 ♗e6 14 ♖xe6 ♜xe6 15 0-0 0-0 16 ♖d5, and once again White has a clear plus.

c3) 6 ... ♖gxe5 7 ♗e2 d6 8 ♖f4 transposes into Sämisch - Spielmann in note 'b'.

5 ... ♖xe5

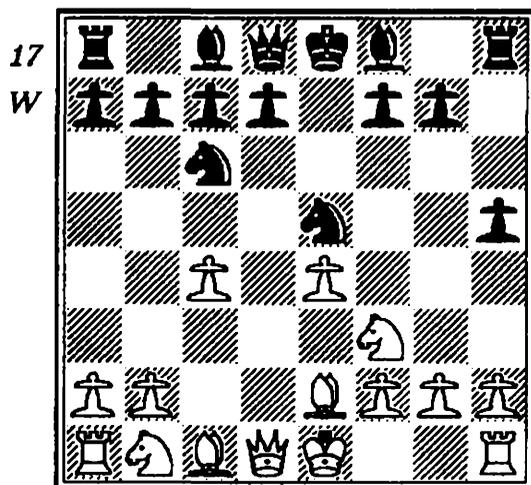
The pawn sacrifice 5 ... d6 6 ed (6 ♖f3 ♖xe5 7 ♖c3! g6 8 ♖d5 is also good) 6 ... ♗xd6 7 ♖f3 favours White, as demonstrated in variation A (note to Black's 6th move).

5 ... ♗c5 6 ♖h3 ♖xe5 is also unsatisfactory; Golombek - Tartakower, London 1951, continued 7 ♗g5 ♗e7 8 ♗xe7 ♜xe7 9 0-0 d6 10 ♖f4 c6 11 ♖c3 ♗g4 12 f3 ♗d7 13 ♜b3, with advantage to White.

6 ♖f3

White may also play 6 ♖c3 ♖bc6 7 ♖h3 d6 8 ♖f4 etc., as in Sämisch - Spielmann.

6 ... ♖bc6 (17)



In the diagrammed position White has the better prospects; this emerges most clearly after 7 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 8 f4.

A game Fine - Morton saw instead 7 ♗e3 ♖g4 8 ♗g5 f6 9 ♗f4 ♗c5 10 ♗g3 f5 11 ef ♜f6 12 ♖c3 ♜xf5 13 0-0 d6 14 ♖d5, which likewise gave White the advantage.

Another good continuation is 7 0-0 ♖xf3+ 8 ♗xf3 ♖e5 9 ♖c3 c6 10 ♗f4 ♜f6 11 ♗xe5 ♜xe5 12 ♗e2 ♗c5 13 ♜h1 d6 14 f4 ♜d4 15 ♜c2 ♗g4 16 ♗ad1, as in Hanauer - Mieses, London 1944.

C

4 ... ♖xe5

This continuation is most usual and best.

5 f4 (18)

After the preparatory 5 ♖c3, Black has two possibilities:

a) 5 ... ♗b4 6 ♖f3 (6 f4 ♖g6! 7 ♖f3 is more active, leading to variation C22) 6

... ♕xc3+ 7 bc ♖e7 8 ♕e2 was played in Tartakower - Tarrasch, Semmering 1926; and now, according to Réti, Black could have equalised with 8 ... ♖xf3+ 9 ♕xf3 d6 10 0-0 0-0.

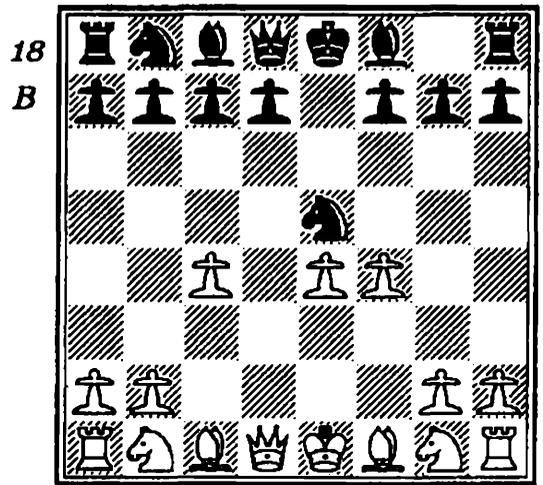
b) 5 ... ♕c5 6 ♕e2 (6 f4 ♖ec6! 7 ♖f3 leads to variation C12), and now there are:

b1) 6 ... ♖bc6 7 ♖f3 d6 8 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 9 0-0. A game Moiseyev - Havin, Moscow 1949, now continued 9 ... a6 10 b3 h5 (appropriate here) 11 ♖a4 ♕a7 12 ♖b2 ♖g5 13 c5 ♕h3 14 ♖f3 ♖d8 15 ♕xe5 de 16 ♖c1 ♖xc1, with an even game. In Cardoso - Heidenfeld, Munich 1958, Black played 9 ... 0-0 (instead of the prophylactic 9 ... a6), and after 10 ♖a4 ♕e6 11 b3 ♖h4 12 ♖xc5 dc 13 ♖c2, he should have replied 13 ... ♖ad8! 14 ♖b2 ♖c6, with about equal chances.

b2) In Timoshenko - Oll, Tbilisi 1989, Black demonstrated a simpler route to equality: 6 ... 0-0! 7 ♖f3 d6 8 ♖xe5 de 9 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 10 ♖d5 ♖a6 11 ♕e3 ♕xe3 12 ♖xe3 ♖c5 13 f3 c6.

We now return to the main line, 5 f4.

In this position, the starting point of the variation, Black's usual continuations are the two retreats with the knight:



C1 5 ... ♖ec6

C2 5 ... ♖g6

Alternatively:

a) The immediate check 5 ... ♖b4+ is playable; on 6 ♕d2 (6 ♖c3 ♖g6 7 ♖f3 leads to variation C22), Tartakower recommended 6 ... ♕xd2+ 7 ♖xd2 ♖ec6 8 ♖c3 0-0 9 ♖f3 (9 e5 f6) 9 ... d6, with approximate equality.

b) A continuation of some interest is 5 ... ♖bc6!? 6 fe (after 6 ♕e3 ♖g6 7 ♖f3 b6! 8 ♖c3 ♕c5 9 ♕xc5 bc 10 f5 ♖h4! the position remains unclear) 6 ... ♖h4+, which according to Yan'kov's analysis leads to these results:

b1) 7 g3 ♖xe4+ 8 ♖e2 ♖xh1 9 ♖f3 ♕c5 10 ♕e3 ♕xe3 11 ♖xe3 0-0 12 ♖bd2 d6, and after 13 0-0-0 ♖xe5 14 ♕h3 ♖xd1+ 15 ♖xd1 ♕xh3 Black has more than enough for the queen.

b2) 7 ♖d2 ♖f4+ 8 ♖c2 ♖xe4+ 9 ♕d3 ♖b4+ 10 ♖c3

26 3 ... ♖g4 4 e4

♙xd3 11 ♚xd3 ♕b4+ 12 ♖c2 ♚xg2+ with a decisive material plus.

b3) 7 ♖e2! ♚xe4+ 8 ♕e3 ♕c5 9 ♚d3 ♚xe5 10 ♙c3 ♕xe3 11 ♚xe3 ♙d4+ 12 ♖d2 ♚xe3+ 13 ♖xe3 ♙c2+ 14 ♖d2, and White's chances are to be preferred.

C1

5 ... ♙ec6

Now there are three lines we shall examine in detail:

C11 6 a3

C12 6 ♙f3

C13 6 ♕e3

6 ♙c3 ♕c5 7 a3 a5 gives a position from C111, while 7 ♙f3 d6 leads to C12.

C11

6 a3

By choosing this prophylactic move White not only deprives the black pieces of the b4 square but also raises doubts about the immediate 6 ... ♕c5, which would be met by 7 b4 ♕xg1 8 ♖xg1 with a space advantage together with the two bishops. A game Hermesmann - Kastrup, Rauchel 1989, continued 8 ... ♚h4+? (Kmoch gives 8 ... 0-0 as better) 9 g3 ♚xh2 10 ♖g2 ♚h1 11 ♙c3 d6 12 ♕e3 a5 13 ♖g1 with advantage to White.

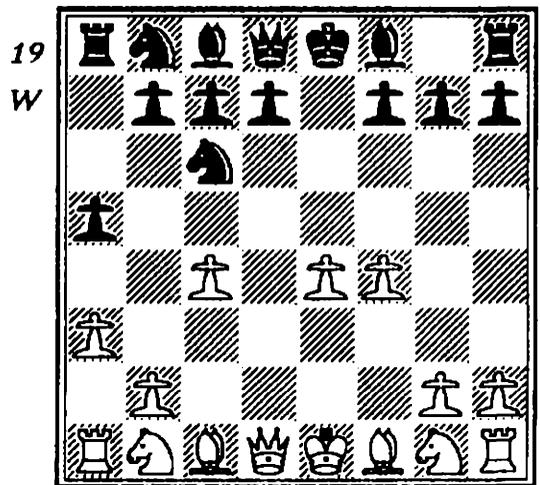
Nevertheless the text move brings little danger to Black. We consider two replies:

C111 6 ... a5

C112 6 ... d6

C111

6 ... a5 (19)



With this move Black secures the c5 square for the development of his bishop.

7 ♕e3

For the aggressive 7 ♙c3 ♕c5 8 ♙d5 see *Illustrative Game No. 3* (Gilg - Vajda).

7 ♙f3 ♕c5 8 ♙c3 is not dangerous for Black. A game Mol - Maciejewski, Gdynia 1985, went 8 ... 0-0 9 ♚d3 ♖e8 10 ♕d2 ♙a6 11 ♙d5? ♕f8 12 ♚c2 ♙c5 13 ♕d3 ♙xe4! 14 ♕xe4 f5 15 0-0-0 fe 16 ♕c3 ef 17 gf, and now with 17 ... ♖e7! Black could have fended off the attack and gained the advantage.

In place of 8 ... 0-0,

practice has also seen 8 ... d6, for example:

a) 9 ♖d3 0-0 10 ♕e3 ♖a6 11 ♜d1 ♖g4 12 ♜f2, and after 12 ... ♖f6 13 ♕xc5 ♖xc5 14 ♖e3 ♜fe8 Black obtained a clear plus in Letelier - Iliesco, Mar del Plata 1936.

b) 9 ♕e2 0-0! (according to Pachman, after 9 ... ♖g4 10 ♖d3 0-0 11 ♕e3 ♖d7 12 0-0 White has a slight edge) 10 f5 ♖e5 11 h4 ♖bc6 12 ♖g5 f6 13 ♖d5+ ♜h8 14 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 15 ♖f4 ♖e8 16 ♜c1 g6 17 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 18 ♖xe5 de 19 fg hg 20 h5 ♜g7 with equality; Meulders - E. Pandavos, Dubai Olympiad 1986.

c) 9 ♕d3 0-0 (9 ... ♖g4 is also playable) 10 ♖e2, and now:

c1) Maroczy suggested 10 ... f5 11 ♕e3 ♕xe3 12 ♖xe3 ♖d7 13 0-0 ♜e8, with equality. But White can improve here with 13 0-0-0!, which gives him the advantage after 13 ... ♜e8 14 ♜he1 ♖c5 15 e5! ♖xd3+ 16 ♖xd3 ♕e6 17 ♖g5.

c2) 10 ... ♖d4 looks better: 11 ♖xd4 ♕xd4 12 ♕e3 ♕xc3+ 13 bc ♖d7, with roughly equal chances.

c3) Yates - Spielmann, Karlsbad 1923, continued differently with 10 ... ♖g4 11 ♕e3 ♖d4? (11 ... ♕xe3! 12 ♖xe3 ♖d7 would have given Black a fully viable game),

and after 12 ♖f2 ♕xf3 13 ♕xd4 ♕xd4 14 ♖xd4 ♖c6 15 ♖f2 White acquired an advantage.

7 ... ♖a6

8 ♕d3

8 ♖d5 d6 9 ♖c3 ♕e7 10 ♖f3 0-0 11 ♕e2 ♖f6 gives a position with chances for both sides, while after 8 ♖f3 ♕c5 9 ♖d2 d6 10 ♖c3 0-0 11 ♕d3 we reach a position in the main line (below).

8 ... ♕c5

9 ♖d2 d6

Tarrasch - Vajda, Semmering 1926, went 9 ... ♖h4+ 10 g3 ♖e7 11 ♖c3 ♕xe3 12 ♖xe3 ♖c5 13 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 14 0-0-0, and now Black could have equalised with 14 ... ♖d4.

10 ♖f3 0-0

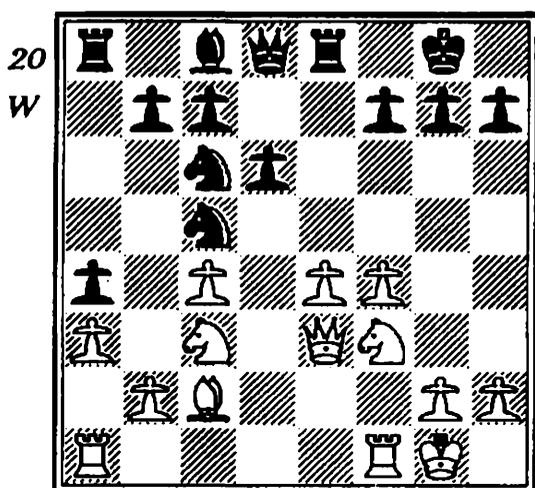
11 ♖c3 ♕xe3

In a game Campolongo - Opocensky, Folkestone 1933, White answered 11 ... ♖g4 with 12 0-0-0, which allowed Black to attain an acceptable position with 12 ... f6 13 h3 ♕xf3 14 gf ♖e8 15 ♜hg1 ♖h5. However, White can do better with 12 0-0!, and if 12 .. ♜e8 then 13 ♜ae1 ♖d7 14 ♖d5 ♕xe3+ 15 ♜xe3 ♖c5 16 ♕c2 with advantage, as in Dobosz - Kamaras, Naestved 1988.

12 ♖xe3 ♖c5

13 0-0 ♜e8

14 ♕c2 a4 (20)



Until recently, this position was assessed as favouring White, on the basis of Knoch - Réti, Semmering 1926. In that game, after 15 ♖ae1 f6 16 ♜f2 ♖g4 17 ♗d4 ♜d7, White could have gained a distinct plus with 18 ♗d5!. But Borik has shown that by playing 15 ... ♗e6! (instead of 15 ... f6) 16 ♗d5 ♗a5, Black could have put White in an awkward position regarding the defence of the artificially isolated c-pawn. For example, if 17 ♜c3 f6 18 ♗d4, then after 18 ... ♗f7 and ... c7 - c6 Black already has the advantage.

A correspondence game Hibbert - Millison, 1989, took a different course: 15 ♖ad1 ♗a5 (here too 15 ... ♗e6 was worth considering) 16 ♜e2 ♗e6 17 ♗d2 (after 17 ♗d5? c6 18 ♗e3 ♜b6, Black has a clear plus) 17 ... f5 18 ♖fe1 (18 ♗xa4 is weak in view of 18 ... ♗xe4, while 18 e5 is met by 18 ... g6) 18 ...

♗f7 19 ♗xa4 (19 e5 g6) 19 ... ♗xe4, and after 20 ♗xe4 ♗xc4 21 ♜f3 fe 22 ♖xe4 d5 23 ♖ee1 d4!? 24 ♗c5 ♖xe1+ 25 ♖xe1 ♜d5 26 ♜xd5+ ♗xd5 27 ♖e5 c6 28 ♖e7 a draw was agreed.

C112

6 ... d6

In this line Black treats his opponent's last move as a waste of tempo.

7 ♗c3

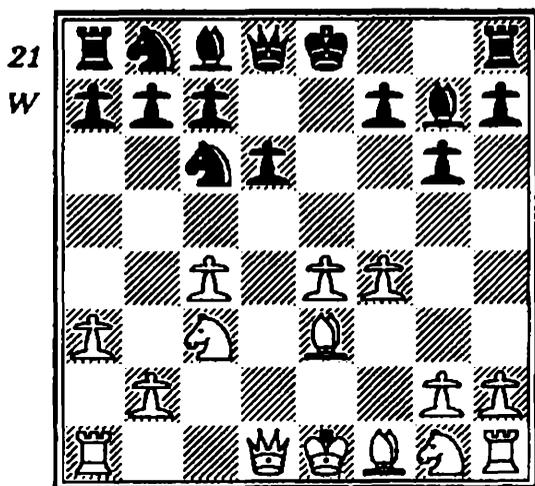
In Vajda - Steiner, Budapest 1925/6, White immediately took the offensive with 7 b4 ♗e7 8 ♗b2 0-0 9 ♗c3 f5 10 ♜d5+ ♜h8 11 e5. There followed the powerful counter-stroke 11 ... de 12 fe ♗xe5! 13 0-0-0 ♗bd7, and White remained a pawn down with the worse position.

7 ... g6

A game Steiner - Vajda, Budapest 1925/6, went 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♗f3 ♗g4 9 ♗e2 ♗h4+ 10 g3 (on 10 ♗xh4 ♜xh4+ 11 g3, there would follow 11 ... ♗xe2 12 ♜xe2 ♜e7) 10 ... ♗f6 11 ♗e3 0-0 12 h3 ♗xf3 13 ♗xf3 ♗xc3+ 14 bc ♗d7 15 ♜f2 ♜e7, with chances for both sides.

8 ♗e3 ♗g7 (21)

Sterk - Steiner, Budapest 1925/6, now continued 9 ♗d3 ♗d4 10 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 11 ♗ge2 ♗g7 12 0-0 ♗d7, with the better game for Black.

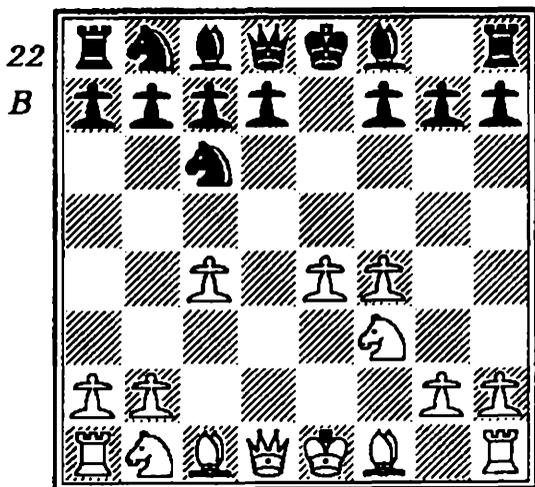


According to Steiner, 9 ♖f3 ♗g4 10 ♗e2 0-0 would have given approximate equality.

C12

6 ♖f3 (22)

This move allows Black to seize the a7 - g1 diagonal immediately.



6 ... ♗c5

In Castro - Drimer, Lugano 1968, Black played the inaccurate 6 ... ♗b4+?! 7 ♖c3 ♗e7 8 ♗d3 ♖a6 9 0-0 ♗xc3 10 bc ♖c5, which was met by 11 ♗a3! b6 12 ♖d4 ♗b7 13 ♖f5 ♗f8 14 ♖e3 ♖a5 15 ♖b1 c6 16 e5 with a clear advantage.

7 ♖c3

The insertion of 7 a3 a5 at this point is quite welcome to Black, as demonstrated in variation C11, note to White's 7th move.

In Tolonen - Gusev, Moscow 1976, White tried 7 ♗d3 0-0 8 ♗e2 ♖a6 9 ♗e3 (better 9 a3, which would be answered by 9 ... ♖d4). There followed 9 ... ♖cb4! 10 ♖a3 (10 0-0 loses to 10 ... ♖xd3 11 ♗xd3 ♖b4) 10 ... ♗xe3 11 ♗xe3 ♗f6! 12 0-0-0 ♖xd3+ 13 ♖xd3 d6 14 e5 de 15 ♖xe5 ♗f5 16 ♖b3 b6 17 g4 ♗e6 18 ♖b5 (oblivious of the danger), and now 18 ... ♗xc4! in conjunction with 19 ... ♗c6 gave Black a clear advantage.

7 ... d6

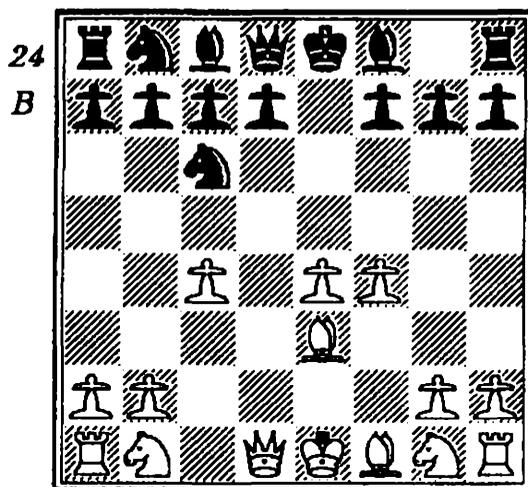
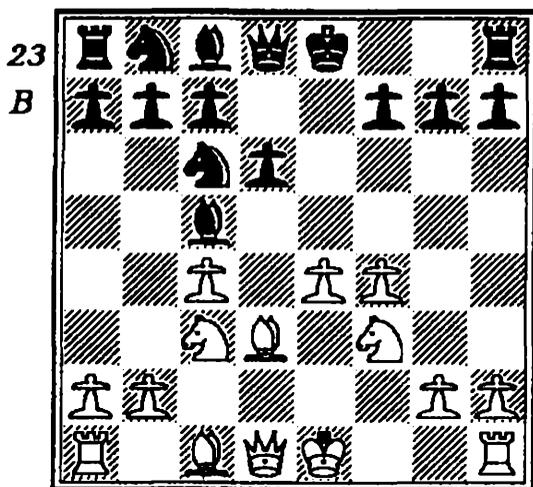
Of course 7 ... 0-0 is playable here, and if 8 a3 then 8 ... a5 with a promising position for Black - see variation C11.

8 ♗d3 (23)

In Cuartas - O'Kelly, Havana 1966, White went into action prematurely with 8 f5 ♖d7 9 ♗g5 f6 10 ♗f4, which was met by 10 ... ♗b4 11 ♗c2 ♖c5 12 0-0-0 ♗xc3 13 ♗xc3 a5 14 ♗d3 b6 15 ♗b1 ♗e7 with the better game for Black.

In this position Black has the following possibilities:

a) 8 ... a5 (wasting a tempo) 9 ♗e2 ♗g4 10 ♗e3



♖d4 11 ♔f2 ♖xf3+ (according to Wedberg, if 11 ... ♕xf3 then 12 ♕xd4 is good) 12 gf ♕xe3 13 ♔xe3 ♔h4+ 14 ♖d2 ♕e6 15 f5 ♕d7 16 ♖ag1, with a clear advantage to White. Instead of 11 ... ♖xf3+, Borik suggests 11 ... ♖e6!?

b) 8 ... 0-0 9 ♔e2 (9 a3 a5 10 ♔e2 leads to variation C111, note 'c' to White's 7th move) 9 ... ♖d4 (it is also worth considering 9 ... ♕g4 10 ♕e3 ♕xe3 11 ♔xe3 ♖d7, or 11 ... ♕xf3) 10 ♖xd4 ♕xd4 11 ♕e3 ♕xc3+ 12 bc ♖d7 with chances for both sides.

c) 8 ... ♕g4 9 h3 ♕xf3 10 ♔xf3 ♖d4 (Abonyi only considered 10 ... ♔h4+, which leads to advantage for White after 11 g3 ♖d4 12 ♔g4) 11 ♔g4 0-0 12 ♕d2 a6 13 0-0-0, and after 13 ... b5! 14 ♖b1 bc 15 ♕xc4 ♖d7 Black obtains counterplay (*ECO*).

C13

6 ♕e3 (24)

In this way White at once stops his opponent's bishop from settling on c5, but allows counterplay of a different kind.

6 ... ♔b4+

Some other possibilities should be noted:

a) 6 ... a5 7 ♖f3 ♖a6 8 ♕e2 ♕c5 9 ♕xc5 ♖xc5 10 ♖c3 0-0 11 0-0 d6 12 ♖d4! with advantage; Saturian - Bergman, 1973.

b) 6 ... d6 7 ♖c3, and now:

b1) 7 ... g6 loses some of its strength here, since White has not wasted time on a2-a3. A game Geus - Van den Bosch, Holland 1929, continued 8 ♔d2 ♕g7 9 ♕e2 ♖d7, and now White should have played 10 ♖f3 0-0 11 0-0 ♖c5 12 ♖d4, with advantage.

b2) 7 ... ♖d7 is also inadequate. Alekhine - Galligo, Gijon 1944, continued 8 ♖f3 ♖f6 9 ♕d3 ♕e7 10 0-0 0-0 11 h3 b6 12 a3 ♖e8 13 ♔c2, with a clear advantage.

c) 6 ... ♖a6 (this continuation is entirely appropriate) 7 ♗f3 ♕c5 8 ♜d2 (if 8 ♕xc5 ♖xc5 9 ♗c3, then 9 ... 0-0 10 ♕d3 d6, with an equal game) 8 ... d6 9 ♗c3 0-0 (Pachman recommends 9 ... ♕g4, but this can be answered by 10 0-0-0! 0-0 11 h3! ♕d7 12 ♕d3 ♖e8 13 ♖he1 ♕xe3 14 ♖xe3 ♗c5 15 ♕b1 with advantage, as in a correspondence game Lybin - Smolensky, 1989) 10 0-0-0 (for 10 ♕d3, see *Illustrative Game No. 4*, Rudakovsky - Ratner) 10 ... ♖e8 (a game Borisenko - Semyonova, 1955, went 10 ... ♕xe3 11 ♜xe3 ♗c5 12 ♕d3 ♗b4 13 ♕b1 ♜e8 14 e5, when Black should have played 14 ... ♜e7 with chances for both sides) 11 h3 ♕xe3 12 ♜xe3 ♗c5 13 g4 a5 (if 13 ... f5, then 14 e5) 14 ♗d4 ♗xd4 15 ♜xd4. All this is given in *ECO* with a reference to Weichert - Richter, Saarow 1937, and assessed as favourable for White; but it is difficult to agree with this, since Black has 15 ... ♜h4! 16 ♕g2 ♜g3 17 ♜d2 ♕e6 18 ♕f1 ♕d7 19 ♕g2 ♕c6 and already the advantage is on his side.

7 ♗c3 (25)

After 7 ♗d2 Black has no difficulties at all, for example:

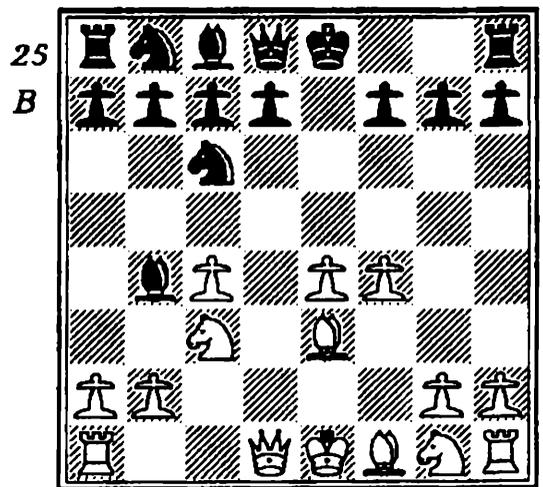
a) 7 ... ♜e7 8 a3? (a blun-

der; he should have played 8 ♜f3) 8 ... ♜xe4! 9 ♜f3 ♕xd2+ 10 ♜xd2 ♜xf3, and White remained a pawn down; Nikolic - Lev, Groningen 1985/6.

b) The preliminary 7 ... ♜h4+ is also playable; after 8 g3 ♜e7 there can follow:

b1) 9 ♕g2 a5 10 ♗e2 ♗a6 11 0-0 d6 12 ♗b3 ♕g4 13 h3 ♕xe2 14 ♜xe2 a4 with equality; Pomar - Heidenfeld, Enschede 1963.

b2) 9 ♜f3 ♗a6 10 0-0-0 ♗c5 11 ♕xc5 ♕xc5 12 ♗b3 d6 13 ♗e2 f5 14 ♗xc5 dc 15 e5 0-0, again with equal chances; Visier - O'Kelly, Malaga 1967.



In this position there are two replies which we shall consider in detail:

C131 7 ... ♜e7

C132 7 ... ♜h4+

For 7 ... ♕xc3+ 8 bc d6 9 ♕d3 ♜e7, see C131, note to Black's 9th move; but 9 ... 0-0 10 ♗f3 ♗d7, as re-

commended by Abonyi, is also playable.

7 ... d6 can acquire independent significance, for example:

a) Grünfeld - Toth, Debrecen 1926, went 8 ♕d3 ♖d7 9 ♖e2 ♖c5 10 ♕c2 ♕g4 11 ♖d2 ♕xe2 12 ♖xe2 ♖f6 13 ♖ad1, with chances for both sides.

b) 8 ♖c2 ♖a6 9 0-0-0, and now:

b1) A game Chebotarev - Machkin, Moscow 1968, continued 9 ... ♕g4 10 ♕e2 ♕xe2 11 ♖gxe2 ♖c8? (better was 11 .. ♖h4) 12 ♖g3 ♕c5 13 ♕xc5 ♖xc5 14 e5! de 15 ♖f5 ♖e6 16 fe ♖xe5 17 ♖he1 f6 18 ♖e4, with a clear advantage to White.

b2) A possibility is 9 ... 0-0 10 ♖d5 (or 10 e5 ♖e8!) 10 ... ♕c5 11 ♕xc5 ♖xc5; and if 12 e5 de 13 ♖b6 (13 ♖f2 ♖d7), then after 13 ... ♖d4! 14 ♖xa8 ♖xc2 15 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 16 ♖xc7 ♖b4 Black's position is preferable.

C131

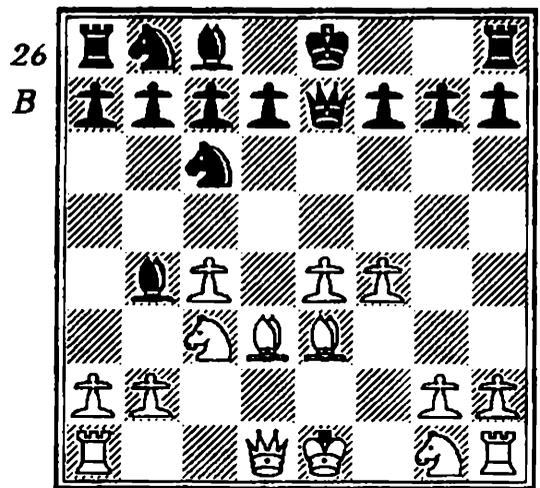
7 ... ♖e7

8 ♕d3 (26)

If 8 ♖f3, then 8 ... ♕xc3+ 9 bc f5 10 ♕d3 fe 11 ♕xe4 0-0, with a good game for Black.

8 ... ♕xc3+

Black cannot do without this exchange. For example, in Alatortsev -



Liliental, Moscow 1935, 8 ... ♖a6 was met by 9 ♖ge2 0-0 10 0-0 ♕c5 11 ♕f2 d6 12 ♖d5 ♖d8 13 a3 ♕xf2+ 14 ♖xf2 ♖c5 15 ♕c2 f5 16 ♖g3 ♖xe4 17 ♖xe4 fe 18 ♕xe4 ♕f5 19 ♕xf5 ♖xf5 20 ♖g4 with advantage.

In answer to 8 ... f5, White has two possibilities to choose from:

a) 9 ♖c2 ♕xc3+ 10 bc ♖a6 11 ♖e2 ♖c5 12 ♕xc5 ♖xc5 13 ef 0-0 14 0-0-0, as in Euwe - Van den Bosch, Amsterdam 1930.

b) 9 ♖h5+ g6 10 ♖f3 0-0 (for 10 ... ♕xc3+, see *Illustrative Game No. 5*, Alekhine - Seitz) 11 ♖ge2 ♖e8 12 0-0 ♕xc3 13 ♖xc3 fe 14 ♕xe4 d6 15 ♖d5 ♖g7 16 ♖ae1, as in Springer - Huber, Munich 1926.

9 bc ♖a6

If 9 ... d6, good continuations are 10 ♖c2 and 10 ♖f3. In a game Andrianov - Ivanov, USSR Junior Ch. 1978, White played instead 10 ♖e2 0-0 11 ♖f3, which

Black should have answered with 11 ... ♗g4! 12 0-0 ♗d7 13 h3 ♗xf3 14 ♖xf3 f6, with a defensible position.

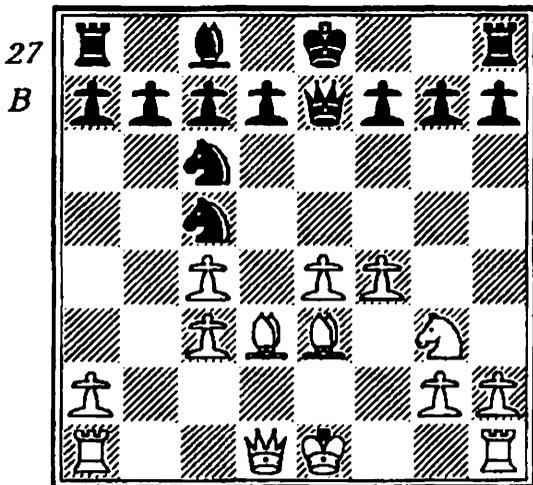
10 ♗e2

Averkin - Halikian, Erevan 1977 went 10 ♖h5 b6 11 ♗f3 ♗c5 12 ♗xc5 ♖xc5 13 ♖xc5 bc 14 ♗d2 0-0 15 ♖b1 ♖b8 16 ♖xb8 ♗xb8, and a draw was agreed.

10 ... ♗c5

11 ♗g3 (27)

If 11 0-0, Black does best to reply 11 ... b6, since after 11 ... ♗xe4 12 ♗d4 ♗xd4 13 ♗xd4 White has enough compensation for the pawn.



In Kmoch - Monticelli, Budapest 1926, the continuation 11 ... d6 12 0-0 ♗d7 13 ♗xc5 dc 14 a4 gave White the better chances.

Therefore Black should play (from the diagram) 11 ... g6! 12 0-0 b6. Cvitan - Rogers, Vrsac 1988 then continued 13 ♗d4 ♖g8 14 e5 ♗b7 15 ♗e4 ♗xe4 16 ♗xe4 0-0-0 17 ♖a4 (17 ♗d5 would

be met by 17 ... g5! with dangerous counterplay) 17 ... ♖b8 (here again 17 ... g5!? was worth considering) 18 ♖ae1 ♗xd4 19 cd ♗xe4 20 ♖xe4 d5! and a draw was agreed soon afterwards.

C132

7 ... ♖h4+
8 g3 ♗xc3+
9 bc ♖e7

This variation is a recommendation of Tartakower's.

10 ♗d3

If 10 ♗f3, then 10 ... b6! (H. Müller).

After 10 ♗g2 Black obtains a satisfactory game, for example:

a) 10 ... d6 11 ♖d3 0-0 12 ♖f2 ♗d7 13 ♖e1 ♗d8 14 ♗f3 ♗e6 15 ♗d2 ♗ec5, Olivera - Rios, Asuncion 1944.

b) 10 ... ♗a6 11 ♗h3 ♗c5 12 ♗f2 b6 13 0-0 ♗a6 14 ♖d5 0-0 15 e5 ♖ad8, Scafarelli - Lemaire, Amsterdam Olympiad 1954.

10 ... ♗a6

10 ... f5 is well answered by 11 ♖c2 etc., on the lines of variation C131 (note 'a' to Black's 8th move).

A game Müller - Donegan, Vienna 1937, went 10 ... d6 11 ♖c2 0-0 12 ♖f2 ♗d7 13 ♖e1 ♗f6 14 ♗d4 ♗g4+ 15 ♖g2 ♗d7, with about equal chances. However, instead of 12 ♖f2, White has 12 ♗f3!

retaining the better prospects.

11 ♖f3

After 11 ♖c2, the variations 11 ... ♖c5 12 ♖f3 (12 ♜d5 b6) 12 ... b6 13 0-0 and 11 ... b6 12 ♖f3 ♖c5 13 0-0 transpose to the main line.

11 ... ♖c5
12 0-0 b6!

The only way! Other variations turn out in White's favour, for instance:

a) 12 ... 0-0 13 ♖e1 b6 14 ♖d4, with the better prospects (Pachman).

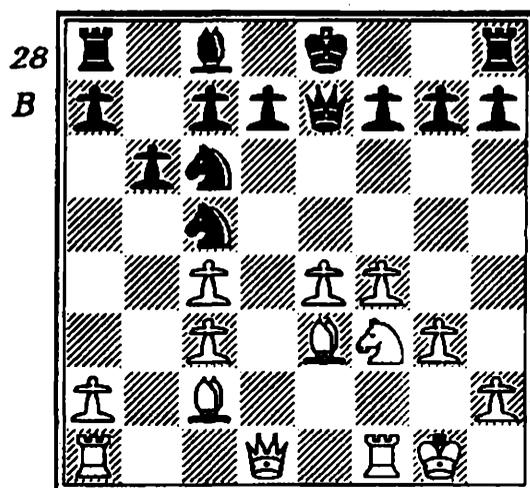
b) 12 ... d6 13 ♖xc5! dc 14 e5, and White's chances are to be preferred.

c) 12 ... ♖xe4 13 ♖e1! (better than the line given by theory: 13 ♖d4 ♖xd4 14 ♖xd4 f5, with equality) 13 ... f5 (13 ... 0-0 14 ♖xe4 ♜xe4 15 ♖c5, or 13 ... ♜d8 14 ♖f2 f5 15 ♖g5, doesn't help) 14 ♖xe4 fe 15 ♖f2 (15 ♜d5 ♜e6 16 ♖c5 is also good) 15 ... 0-0 16 ♜d5+ and 17 ♖xe4, with a highly promising position (authors' analysis).

13 ♖c2 (28)

13 ♖d4 ♖xd4 14 ♖xd4 ♖xd3 15 ♜xd3 0-0 promises White nothing, while in answer to 13 ♖e1 Black has 13 ... ♖b7 or even 13 ... ♖a6!?

In this position 13 ... ♖a6 seems to be a good move. On the other hand, 13 ... ♖xe4? would be a blunder



on account of 14 ♖xe4 ♜xe4 15 ♖xb6.

In Keres - Gilg, Prague 1937, Black played 13 ... ♖b7 14 e5 0-0-0, and after 15 ♖d4 he could have obtained at least equal chances with 15 ... g6!

C2

5 ... ♖g6

Abonyi's recommendation. In this position we shall examine two of White's possibilities in detail:

C21 6 ♖e3

C22 6 ♖f3

The prophylactic 6 a3 is not dangerous for Black. In reply, Tartakower advised 6 ... a5, and if 7 ♖e3, then 7 ... ♖a6 with ♖c5 to follow; or if 7 ♖f3, then 7 ... ♖c6 8 ♖d3 b6!, and after that ... ♖c5. However, a more promising reply to 6 a3 is the immediate 6 ... ♖c5!?, as the following examples

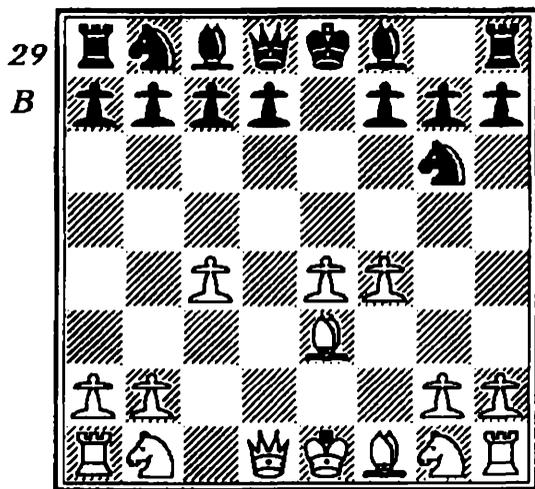
show:

a) 7 ♖f3 d6 8 b4 ♗b6 9 c5 (Mechkarov gives 9 f5 ♖h4 10 ♖g5 ♗e7 11 c5 dc 12 ♗c4 cb 13 ♗xf7+ ♖f8, with a clear plus for Black) 9 ... dc 10 ♗xd8+ ♖xd8 11 f5 ♖e7 12 ♖g5 ♖e8 13 ♗c4 f6 14 ♖e6 ♗xe6 15 ♗xe6 ♖bc6, with an extra pawn and the better position (authors' analysis).

b) 7 b4 ♗xg1 8 ♖xg1 0-0! 9 ♗f3 d6 10 g4 a5 11 b5 ♖d7 12 ♖a2 ♖c5 13 ♗e3 b6, and Black's advantage is not in doubt; Mechkarov - V Atanasov, corr. 1955.

C21

6 ♗e3 (29)



6 ... ♗b4+

On 6 ... ♖a6 7 ♖c3 ♗c5 8 ♗d2 d6, White obtains a plus with 9 ♗xc5 ♖xc5 10 b4.

6 ... ♗h4+? is thoroughly bad: 7 g3 ♗e7 (7 ... ♗f6 8 e5) 8 ♖d2, with a clear advantage.

7 ♖c3

A mistake would be 7

♖f2 ♗e7 8 ♖f3 ♖c6 9 ♗d5 b6, with advantage to Black.

After 7 ♖d2 ♗e7 8 ♗c2 ♗c5! Black's chances look preferable, whereas according to Tartakower 8 ... ♖c6 9 ♖f3 b6 10 ♗e2 ♗b7 leads to equality. In Alburt - McClintock, Las Vegas 1987, White played 8 ♗d3 (instead of 8 ♗c2), whereupon Black could have secured the better prospects with 8 ... ♗d6! Instead the game went 8 ... f5? 9 ♗c2 fe 10 ♗xe4 d5 11 ♗xg6+ hg 12 ♗xg6+ ♖f8 13 ♖f2 ♗xd2 14 ♗xd2 ♗c5+ 15 ♖g3 ♖d7 16 ♖f3 ♖h6 17 ♗d3 dc 18 ♗d4, with a clear advantage for White.

7 ... ♗xc3+

If 7 ... d6, White obtains the better prospects with 8 ♖e2! ♗g4 9 ♗b3 ♖c6 10 0-0-0.

The variation 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♗c2 f5 9 ♗d3 fe 10 ♗xe4 ♗xc3+! transposes into the main line.

8 bc ♗e7

In this situation the preliminary check with 8 ... ♗h4+ 9 g3 ♗e7 is pointless. For example, 10 ♗d3 d6 11 ♗c2 0-0 12 ♖f3 f5 13 0-0 ♖e8 14 ♖d2 (Euwe), or 10 ... 0-0 11 ♖f3 ♖e8 12 ♗c2 f5 13 ♖d2 d5 14 cd fe 15 ♗xe4 with advantage to White in both cases.

9 ♕d3 f5

In Merenyi - Bakonyi, Budapest 1925/6, 9 ... 0-0 was met by 10 ♖e2! d6 11 ♖g3 ♜e8 12 0-0, with the better prospects for White.

10 ♜c2 fe

Here too, 10 ... 0-0 11 ♖e2 d6 looks dubious. In Steiner - Bakonyi, Budapest 1925/6, the continuation was 12 0-0 ♖d7 13 ♕d4 fe 14 ♕xe4 c5 15 f5! and White had a clear advantage.

11 ♕xe4 ♖xf4!

This combative counteraction was discovered and developed by Grünfeld.

12 ♕xf4 d5

13 cd ♕f5

14 0-0-0

After 14 ♜a4+ ♖d7 15 0-0-0 ♜xe4 16 ♜xe4+ ♕xe4 17 ♜e1, Black acquires a decisive material plus with 17 ... ♖f6! 18 ♕g5 0-0 19 ♕xf6 ♕xg2 20 ♕e7 ♜f7. A slight improvement is 15 ♖e2 (instead of 15 0-0-0) 15 ... ♜xe4 16 ♜xe4+ ♕xe4 17 0-0 ♕xd5 18 ♕xc7, but here again after 18 ... ♖f6! Black's chances remain preferable (Mechkarov).

14 ... ♕xe4

15 ♜a4+

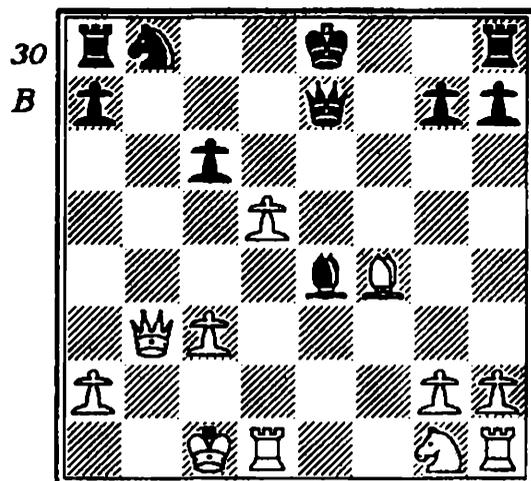
Tartakower gives the variation 15 ♜b3 0-0 16 d6+ ♜f7 17 ♜xf7+ ♜xf7 18 dc ♖a6! 19 ♜d8+ ♜f8 20 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 21 ♖e2 ♜c8! 22 ♜d1 ♖xc7 23 ♖g3 ♕g6! 24 ♜d7

♖e6 25 ♕d2 ♖c5, and Black retains the more favourable chances.

15 ... b5

16 ♜xb5+ c6

17 ♜b3 (30)



In a game Meier - Grünfeld, corr. 1920, where this variation first occurred, Black played 17 ... ♕xg2?! 18 dc ♕xh1 19 ♕xb8 ♕xc6 20 ♕d6, and White obtained more than enough compensation for the exchange.

Later Grünfeld showed that a relatively better line was 18 ... ♖xc6 (instead of 18 .. ♕xh1) 19 ♖f3 ♕xf3 20 ♜h1 ♕xd1 21 ♜xe7+ ♖xe7 22 ♜e6! ♕g4 23 ♜xg4 0-0, although even so, after 24 ♜e6+, White's dangerous passed pawn ensures him the better prospects.

In the diagrammed position Black should, according to Tartakower, play 17 ... 0-0! 18 d6+ ♜f7 19 ♜xf7+ ♜xf7 20 ♖e2 ♖d7 21 ♜d4 ♕xg2 22 ♜e1 ♜e8, with equality.

C22

6 ♖f3 ♚b4+

The usual view is that after 6 ... ♖c6 White gains the advantage with 7 ♚e3. but this is far from clear if Black replies 7 ... b6, for example: 8 ♖c3 ♚c5 9 ♚xc5 bc 10 f5 ♖h4! with counterplay.

For 6 ... ♚c5, see *Illustrative Game No. 6* (Alekhine - Rabinovich).

7 ♖c3 (31)

7 ♖bd2 is a mistake in view of 7 ... ♖xf4 or 7 ... ♜e7!, while after 7 ♚d2 ♜e7 8 ♜f2 Black's task is made considerably easier: 8 ... ♚xd2! 9 ♜xd2 ♜xe4, and if 10 ♖c3, then 10 ... ♜xf4 11 ♜e1+ ♜d8! with advantage.

Instead of 8 ... ♚xd2, the tempting 8 ... ♚c5+ 9 ♜g3 0-0 is dubious. A game Pachenko - Marin, corr. 1979, continued 10 ♚d3 ♖c6 11 ♖c3 ♖d4 12 h4! ♖e6 13 ♖d5 ♜e8 14 h5 ♖e7 15 h6 c6 16 hg ♜xg7 17 e5 ♖g6 18 ♖f6, and Black resigned.

We shall now analyse these possibilities for Black:

C221 7 ... d6

C222 7 ... ♜f6!

In a game Blamin - Ulvestad, USA 1939, Black played 7 ... ♜e7 8 ♚d3 ♖a6 9 0-0 ♚xc3 10 bc d6, which was met by 11 e5! de 12 f5 ♜c5+ 13 ♜h1 ♖e7 14 ♖g5! ♚d7 15 f6 gf 16 ♖e4, with a clear plus for White.

If 7 ... 0-0 8 ♚d3, Black should reply 8 ... d6, since 8 ... ♖a6 9 f5! is in White's favour.

C221

7 ... d6

8 ♚d3

In a game Mititelu - Kwiatkowski, Bulgaria 1955, White prepared queenside castling: 8 ♜b3 ♖c6 9 ♚d2 0-0 10 0-0-0. There followed 10 ... ♜e8 11 ♚d3 ♖g4 12 ♜df1 a5, with chances for both sides.

8 ... ♚xc3+

Let us look at the alternatives:

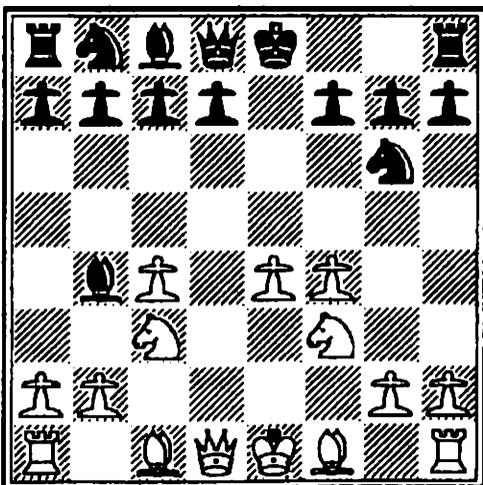
a) 8 ... ♖d7 9 0-0 ♚xc3 10 bc ♖c5 or 9 ♚e3 ♚xc3+ 10 bc, would transpose into variations given below.

b) 8 ... 0-0 9 0-0 ♚xc3 10 bc ♖a6 11 ♚e3 b6, with a roughly equal game.

c) 8 ... ♚c5 9 ♖a4 (according to Mechkarov, 9 ♜e2

31

B



♖c6 10 ♙e3 ♙g4 11 0-0-0
 ♖d4 12 ♚f2 ♙xf3 13 gf ♚h4
 gives Black the advantage)
 9 ... ♖c6 10 ♖xc5 dc 11 0-0
 ♙g4 (according to *ECO*, 11
 ... 0-0 12 ♙e3 b6 favours
 White) 12 h3 ♙xf3 13 ♚xf3
 ♚e7, followed by ... 0-0-0,
 with about equal chances.

9 bc ♖d7

The plan of besieging the
 c4 pawn is worth consid-
 ering. A game Chebotarev -
 Isayev, Moscow 1948, pro-
 ceeded as follows: 9 ... ♖c6
 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♚c2 b6 12 ♖d4
 ♖a5 13 ♙e3 ♚d7 14 ♖f5 ♙a6
 15 ♙d4 f6 16 ♚e2, and now
 instead of 16 ... ♚f7, which
 led to a clear plus for
 White after 17 e5 ♗ae8 18
 ♚g4, Black could have
 played 16 ... ♚e6! 17 ♖e3
 ♖e7 18 ♖d5 ♖xd5 19 cd
 ♙xd3 20 ♚xd3 ♚d7, with a
 good game.

10 ♙e3

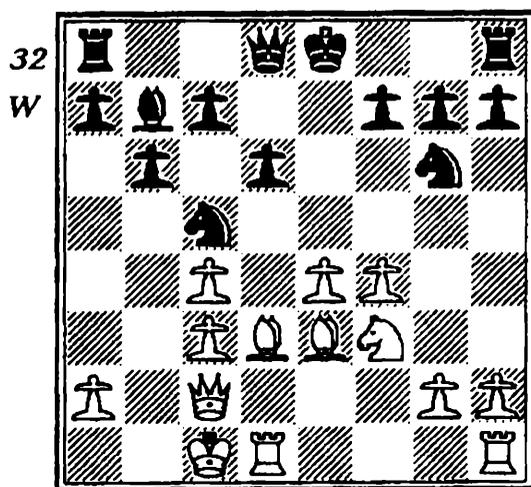
In answer to 10 0-0, Vaj-
 da recommended 10 ... ♖c5
 11 ♙e3 b6, with approxi-
 mately equal chances.

10 ... ♖c5

11 ♚c2 b6

12 0-0-0 ♙b7 (32)

In this critical position
ECO recommends 13 ♖d4,
 assessing it in White's fa-
 vour. It is difficult to agree
 with this, for example 13 ...
 ♖xd3+ (13 ... 0-0!? also
 deserves consideration) 14
 ♚xd3 ♚e7 15 ♖f5 ♚xe4 16



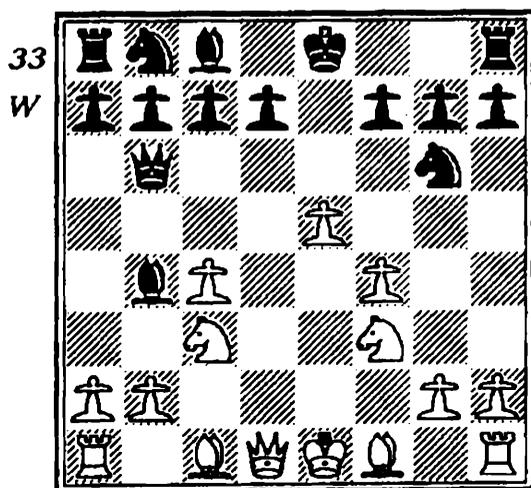
♖xg7+ ♖d7! and Black's
 position is at least no
 worse.

Similarly after 13 h4
 ♖xd3+ 14 ♚xd3 ♚e7 15 e5 de
 16 fe 0-0, Black has excel-
 lent prospects (authors'
 analysis).

C222

7 ... ♚f6!

8 e5 ♚b6 (33)



This elementary man-
 oeuvre, discovered by Ke-
 vitz, at once solves all
 Black's problems. A game
 Reshevsky - Shipman, New
 York 1955/6, continued 9 a3
 (an inaccuracy) 9 ... ♙xc3+
 10 bc d6! 11 ed 0-0! 12 ♚d4

(after 12 dc ♖e8+ 13 ♙e2 ♗xc7 14 0-0 ♗xf4, Black has an obvious plus) 12 ... ♗a5 13 ♙e2 ♗c6 14 ♗d5 cd, and Black obtained clearly the better prospects.

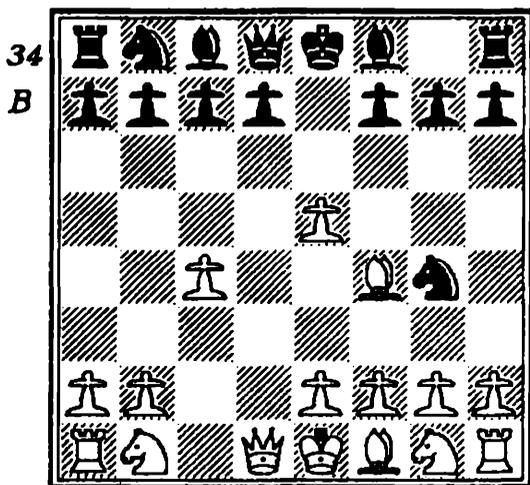
In the diagrammed position, a more accurate choice is 9 ♗d3 d6 10 a3

♙xc3+ 11 ♗xc3. In Fine - Kevitz, USA 1945, this led to approximate equality after 11 ... 0-0 12 ♙e3 ♗c6 13 0-0-0 de 14 fe ♗d7.

So on the evidence we have seen, the once popular 4 e4 presents no great danger to Black.

3) 3 ... ♞g4 4 ♚f4

- 1 d4 ♞f6
- 2 c4 e5
- 3 de ♞g4
- 4 ♚f4 (34)



The move favoured by Akiba Rubinstein. For the present, White declines to show his hand; will he hang on to the gambit pawn, or give it back at a suitable moment? It was this system that Bogoljubow held to be the refutation of the Budapest Gambit.

There are two replies whose consequences we shall analyse in full:

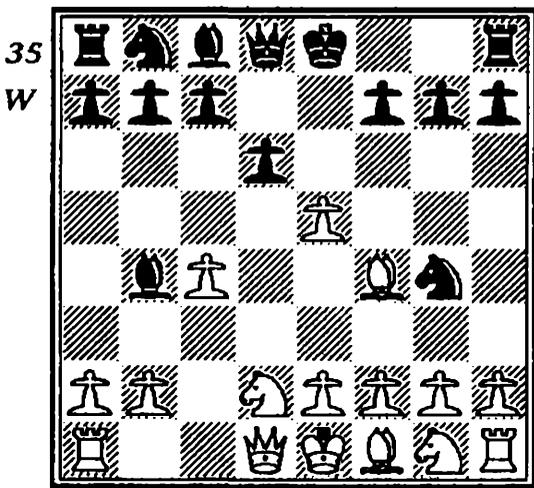
- A 4 ... g5
- B 4 ... ♞c6

But some other continu-

ations are also seen in tournaments. For example, in a game Rattman - Keres, corr. 1934, Black tried out 4 ... f6?!. There followed 5 e3 ♚b4+ 6 ♞c3 h5 7 ♞f3 ♞xe5 8 ♞xe5 fe 9 ♚xe5 ♚e7 10 ♚xc7 ♞a6 (if 10 ... ♞c6, then 11 a3) 11 ♚f4 g5 12 ♚d4! ♞f8 13 ♚e5 d6 14 ♚g7 ♞f7 15 ♚h8, and White gained a decisive advantage.

A move worth considering is 4 ... ♚b4+, which leads to variation B1 after 5 ♞c3 ♞c6 6 ♞f3. On the other hand if White chooses 5 ♞d2, Black can steer the game in a different direction: 5 ... f6 6 e3 (6 ♞gf3 ♞c6 leads to variation B2) 6 ... ♚xd2+ 7 ♚xd2 fe. In Saborido - Heidenfeld, Torremolinos 1961, there followed 8 ♚g3 ♞c6 9 ♞f3 ♚e7 10 ♚e2 d6 11 0-0 ♞f6 12 ♚h4 ♚f5 13 ♞ac1 ♞e4!? 14 ♚e1 g5 15 ♞xg5 ♞xg5 16 f4, with unclear complications.

Instead of 5 ... f6, the move 5 ... d6 has also been seen, giving the position below (35):



Now White has:

a) 6 ed ♖f6 7 e3 (after 7 ♕g3 ♖xb2 8 ♖gf3 ♕f5, Black obtains an attack) 7 ... ♖xf2 8 ♖xf2 g5 9 ♖e4 ♖xb2+ 10 ♕e2 gf 11 ♖d4, with sharp play and approximate equality.

b) 6 ♕g3 ♖xe5 7 a3 ♖e7 8 e3 ♕xd2+ (at this point, in our view, 8 ... ♕c5 is worth considering, and if 9 b4, then 9 ... ♕d4, with 9 ... a5 to follow) 9 ♖xd2 0-0 10 ♕e2 a5 11 ♖f3 ♖bd7 12 0-0 ♖c5, with about equal chances; Dunkelblum - Heidenfeld, Venice 1953.

c) 6 ♖gf3 de 7 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 8 ♖xe5 ♖d4 9 ♖d3 ♖xc4! with equality. In place of 9 ... ♖xc4, Gligoric suggests 9 ... ♕xd2+ 10 ♖xd2 ♖xc4, but this can be met by 11 e3 0-0 12 ♖f4 with the initiative (authors' analysis).

d) 6 a3 de 7 ♕g3 ♕xd2+ (if 7 ... ♕d6, then 8 ♖e4) 8 ♖xd2. The game Szabo - Prins, Havana 1966, now continued 8 ... ♖xd2+ 9

♖xd2 ♖c6 10 f3 ♖h6 11 e4 ♕e6 12 ♖c3 f6 (12 ... 0-0-0 can be answered by 13 ♕d3 ♕d7 14 ♖e2 ♖he8 15 ♖hd1 f6 16 ♕f2, followed by b2 - b4) 13 ♕d3 ♖f7 14 ♖e2 ♖e7 15 ♕f2, and White's chances are to be preferred.

Instead of exchanging queens, Black would do better to play 8 ... ♖e7! 9 ♖f3 f6, with equal chances (authors' analysis).

A

4 ... g5

This extravagant tactical stroke weakens the king-side and, on general grounds alone, cannot be good. Nonetheless some players have a penchant for it.

We consider two replies:

A1 5 ♕g3

A2 5 ♕d2

A1

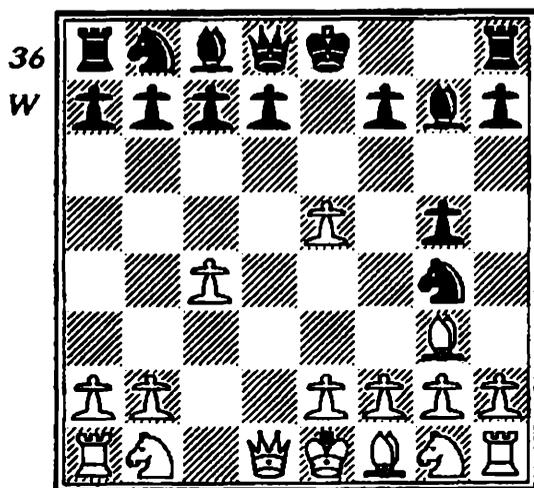
5 ♕g3

As a result of this retreat, the bishop is in danger of staying out of play for a long time.

5 ... ♕g7 (36)

6 ♖f3

This move is the most popular, although some other possibilities deserve attention. For example, 6 ♖c1 (a recommendation of Gheorghiu), or 6 h4 ♖xe5 7

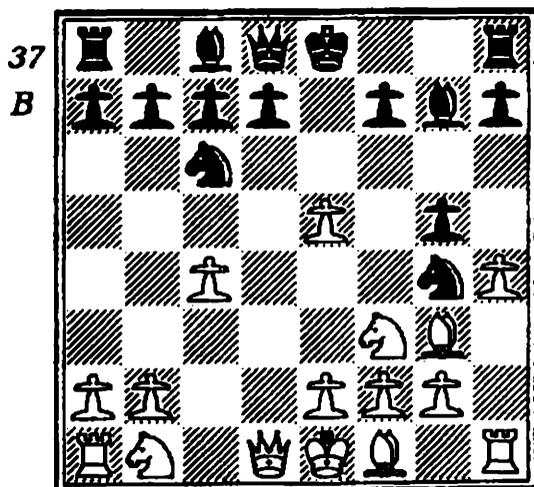


e3, to which the best reply is 7 ... d6 8 ♖c3 ♖a6. In a game Bagirov - Gerasimov, USSR 1975, Black opted for 7 ... ♖bc6 (ECO's recommendation 7 ... g4 is well answered by either 8 h5 or 8 ♖e2); there followed 8 hg ♗xg5 9 ♖c3 d6 10 ♖h3 ♕xh3 11 ♖xh3 ♗f5 (11 ... ♗g6 12 ♗b1 ♖b4 13 ♖d2 0-0-0 is a little better) 12 ♗b1 ♗g6 13 ♕h4 ♖b4 14 ♖d2 ♗g4 15 ♗e4, and White acquired an undoubted plus.

6 ... ♖c6

7 ♖c3

Apart from this 7 h4 is also played, giving the following position (37):



Black's possibilities are:

a) 7 ... ♖gxe5 8 ♖xg5! h6 9 ♖f3 ♖xc4 if (9 ... ♖xf3+ 10 ef ♕xb2 White continues 11 ♖d2! ♕xa1 12 ♗xa1 0-0 13 ♕f4, with more than enough for the exchange) 10 ♖c3 ♖xb2 11 ♗c2! ♖a4 12 ♖d5 d6 13 ♖d1 ♖c5 14 h5 and, according to Forintos, White has a dangerous initiative.

b) 7 ... ♖cxe5 8 ♖xe5 (according to Mechkarov, the consequences of 8 ♖xg5 h6 9 ♖e4 ♖xc4 10 ♖bc3 0-0! are unclear) 8 ... ♖xe5, and now:

b1) Kouatly - Preissmann, Baguio 1983, went 9 hg ♖xc4 10 ♖c3 c6 (after 10 ... ♖xb2 11 ♗b3 ♖a4 12 ♖d5 ♕xa1 13 ♖xc7+ ♖f8 14 ♕d6+ and 15 ♗xa4, White has a powerful attack) 11 e4!! ♖xb2 12 ♗d2 ♖a4 13 ♖xa4 ♕xa1 14 ♕d6, and White obtained a decisive plus. However, Black could have played more strongly: 10 ... ♗xg5!, and if 11 ♖d5 (11 ♗c2 is met by d5, while if 11 e3 then 11 ... ♖xb2 is playable) Black has 11 ... c6 12 ♖c7+ ♖f8 13 ♕d6+ ♖g8, with a clear advantage (authors' analysis).

b2) Belevets - Smolensky, corr. 1978, varied with 9 e4 d6 10 ♗b3 (if 10 ♗c1, then 10 ... g4) 10 ... ♖c6 11 ♖d2. There followed 11 ... a5! 12

♖cl a4 13 ♖a3 f5 14 hg ♖xg5
15 c5 f4 16 ♕h4 ♖e5 17 cd cd
18 ♗c4 ♖xe4+, and Black
acquired a considerable
plus.

b3) 9 e3 can be answered
by either 9 ... d6 or 9 ... g4.

c) 7 ... h6 8 ♖c1 ♗gxe5 9
♗bd2?! (better is 9 ♗xe5
♗xe5 10 e4, with a roughly
equal game) 9 ... ♖e7! 10 e3
♗xf3+ 11 gf (if 11 ♗xf3 then
11 ... ♖b4+) 11 ... d6 12 ♕e2,
and after 12 ... ♕f5, threat-
ening ... ♗b4, Black gains
a clear advantage. A game
Frey - Bakonyi, Hungary
1974, continued 13 a3 0-0-0
14 h5 ♖he8 15 0-0 ♕e5! 16
♕xe5 ♖xe5 17 ♖g2 ♖e6 18
♖h1 g4 19 f4 g3!, and Black
won quickly.

We now return to the
main line (7 ♗c3).

7 ... ♗gxe5

8 ♗xe5

In a game Shainswit -
Jackson, USA 1943, 8 e3 d6
9 ♕e2 ♕e6 10 ♖a4 ♕d7 11
♖c2 ♗g6 12 0-0-0 ♗b4 13
♖d2 a5 14 h4 g4 15 ♗d4 a4
led to a position with mu-
tual chances.

8 ... ♗xe5

The additional exchange
8 ... ♕xe5 9 ♕xe5 ♗xe5 is
weaker. In a game Hasin -
Drimer, 1970, the continua-
tion was 10 ♖d4 d6 11 c5
0-0 12 0-0-0 ♕e6, and now
13 e3 ♗g4 14 ♖d2! (indicated
by Kotov) would have se-

cured White a plus.

9 e3

The variation 9 e4 d6 10
♕e2 0-0! 11 0-0 (if 11 h4,
then 11 ... g4) 11 ... ♖h8 12 f4
gf 13 ♕xf4 f5 14 ♖d2 ♕e6 15
ef ♖xf5 16 ♗d5 ♖d7 gives
Black an acceptable game
according to Mechkarov.
However, in place of 9 ... d6
it is worth considering 9 ...
h5!?, with the same idea as
in the main line.

9 ... d6

In Karasev - Vershinin,
Leningrad 1975, Black
played 9 ... h5!?, which led
to an extremely sharp
struggle: 10 h4 g4 11 ♖d5 d6
12 c5 ♕e6 13 ♖xb7 0-0 14
0-0-0?! (very risky; better
was 14 ♕e2) 14 ... ♗d7 15 cd
c6! 16 ♖c7 ♖f6 17 ♖a5 ♕d5
18 ♖d2 ♖ab8 19 e4 ♕h6 20
ed, and now with 20 ... ♖d4!
Black could have acquired a
clear advantage.

10 h4

After 10 ♕e2 ♕e6, good
counterplay emerges for
Black. For example, 11 ♖c2
(for 11 ♖cl, see *Illustrative
Game No. 7*, Almeida -
Rossiter) 11 ... ♖d7 12 ♗b5
♗c6 13 ♖d1 a6 14 ♗d4 ♗xd4
15 ed ♕f5 16 ♖d2 h6 17 0-0
0-0 18 h4 ♕f6 19 hg hg 20
b4 ♖g7 21 c5 ♖ae8 22 d5
♖h8 23 ♖fe1 ♖e4 24 a3 ♖d4,
with advantage to Black;
Oll - Shevchenko, Jurmala
1982.

According to *ECO*, 10 c5 leaves White with the better prospects. Let us look at Black's options:

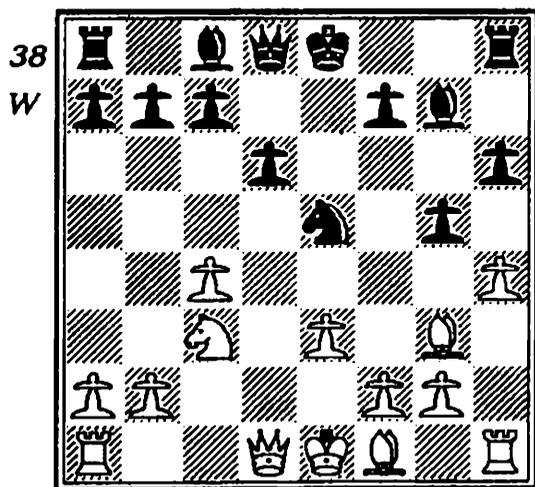
a) 10 ... 0-0 11 cd cd 12 ♕e2 f5 13 ♖d2 ♕e6 14 h4 h6, with advantage to White; Berger - Zinner, London 1927.

b) 10 ... ♖g4 11 f3 ♕e6 12 cd 0-0 13 ♕e2 cd 14 0-0, and White's chances are preferable; Svechnikov - Berkovich, Kiev 1967.

c) 10 ... dc! 11 ♖xd8+ ♗xd8 12 0-0-0+ (or 12 ♖e4 h6) 12 ... ♕d7 13 ♖e4. *ECO* considers that White has clear plus, and yet by continuing 13 ... ♗e7 14 ♖xg5 ♕c6 15 ♖h3 ♖ad8 Black obtains a satisfactory game (authors' analysis).

10 ... h6 (38)

If 10 ... g4 (recommended by *ECO*), then 11 h5, retaining good prospects.



A controversial position. *ECO* quotes the game Korchnoi - Yukhtman, Tbilisi 1959, which continued 11

♖b3 0-0 12 hg hg 13 ♖d1 ♕e6 14 ♖b5, and after 14 ... f5 15 ♕xe5 ♕xe5 16 ♖d4 White gained the advantage. In our view 14 ... ♖c6! was stronger, and if 15 ♖c2 f5 16 c5 a6 17 ♕c4, then after 17 ... ♖f7! 18 ♕xf7+ (or 18 ♖a3 ♖f6 19 cd ♖xb2) 18 ... ♖xf7 19 ♖c3 f4, Black seizes the initiative.

Schüssler - Herrera-Peréz, Havana 1985, went 11 c5 ♕e6 12 cd ♖xd6 (after 12 ... cd 13 hg hg 14 ♖xh8+ ♕xh8 15 ♖h5 ♖g7 16 ♕b5+, the advantage is with White) 13 ♖xd6 cd 14 hg hg 15 ♖xh8+ ♕xh8 16 ♖e4, and White obtained a decisive material plus. However, in place of 11 ... ♕e6 Black has the considerably stronger 11 ... dc!, when a sample continuation is 12 ♖xd8+ ♗xd8 13 0-0-0+ ♕d7 14 hg hg 15 ♖xh8+ ♕xh8 16 ♖e4 ♗e7 17 ♖xg5 ♕c6 18 ♖h3 ♖d8! with a satisfactory game (authors' analysis).

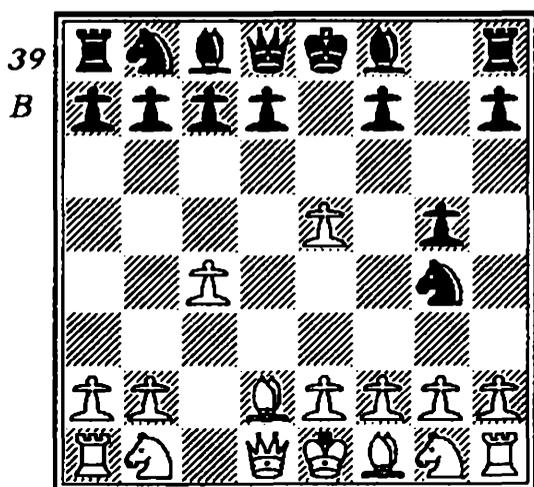
A2

5 ♕d2 (39)

Here the bishop is a good deal more actively placed, which means that White may count on gaining the advantage.

5 ... ♖xe5

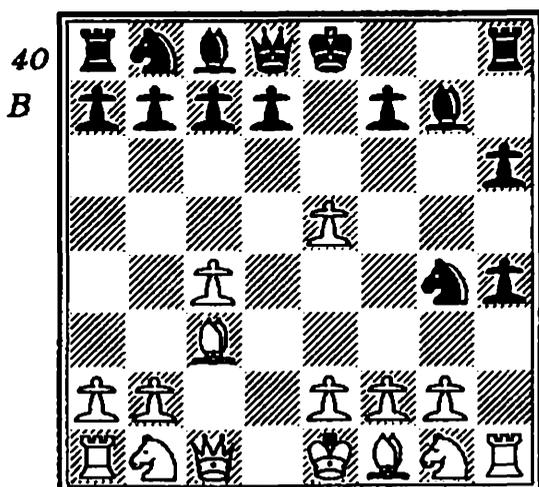
This immediate capture is the most common, but other continuations have



also been seen.

ECO suggests 5 ... ♖c6 6 ♖c1 h6 7 h4 gh 8 ♕c3 ♖e7, and assesses the position as unclear. But after 9 ♖f3 ♕g7 (or 9 ... ♖gxe5 10 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 11 ♖e3) 10 ♖f4 ♖gxe5 11 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 12 ♖xh4, White's positional advantage is obvious (12 ... ♖d3+ 13 ♖d2!) - authors' analysis.

In answer to 5 ... ♕g7, White may play 6 ♖c1 (6 ♖f3 ♖xe5 leads to the main line) 6 ... h6 7 h4 gh 8 ♕c3, giving the position below (40):



A correspondence game Haberdtitz - Koskelas, 1935, continued 8 ... ♖e7 9 e6 fe

10 ♖f4 h5 11 ♖xc7 ♖c6 12 ♖f3. *ECO* asserts that White has a clear plus here, yet after 12 ... ♖b4! 13 ♖a3 ♕xc3+ 14 bc ♖a6 15 ♖a5 b6, the advantage passes to Black. Instead of the risky 9 e6, White gains the advantage with 9 ♖f3! ♖c6 10 ♖f4 (see analysis of 9 ... ♖c6).

Another correspondence game, Nagy - Abonyi, 1931, went 8 ... ♕xe5 9 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 10 ♖e3 ♖e7 11 ♖c3 ♖g6 12 ♖d2 d6 13 ♖d5 ♖d8 14 ♖c3 ♖d7 15 e3, with advantage to White. In place of 11 ... ♖g6, Black could have improved with 11 ... ♖xc4! which leads to approximate equality after 12 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 13 ♖d5+ ♖d8 14 ♖c1 c6 15 ♖xc4 cd 16 ♖cxh4 ♖c6. But then, White's play too was inaccurate. In the first place, instead of 10 ♖e3, it was worth considering either 10 ♖c3 d6 11 e3 ♖bc6 12 ♖d2 with 0-0-0 to follow, or 10 ♖c3 ♖g6 11 ♖g7 (alternatively 11 ♖f3 0-0 12 ♖bd2) 11 ... ♖e7 12 ♖f3 - with the better prospects in both cases. Secondly, in place of 11 ♖c3, White should have played 11 ♖xh4! ♖bc6 (if 11 ... d6, then 12 ♖xh6 ♖xh6 13 ♖xh6 ♖xc4 14 ♖h8+ ♖d7 15 g3) 12 ♖f3 d6 13 ♖xe5 de 14 g3, and White's chances are

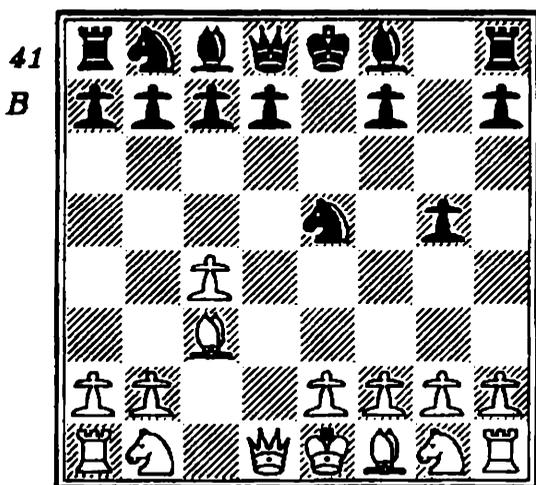
to be preferred (authors' analysis).

To return to the main line (5 ... ♖xe5):

6 ♖f3

This time, 6 ♖c1 h6 7 h4 can be met by 7 ... g4!, so as to answer 8 e3 with 8 ... g3! 9 fg ♖g8, paralysing White's kingside.

In addition to the text move, a good continuation is 6 ♔c3, leading to the following position (41):



White threatens to turn his pressure on the long diagonal to account, by means of f2 - f4 (after a preparatory e2 - e3). For example, after 6 ... ♔g7 7 e3, a game Fuster - Bakonyi, Hungary 1951, continued 7 ... g4 (if 7 ... ♖bc6, then 8 f4) 8 ♖e2 d6 9 ♖f4 ♖bc6 (for 9 ... h5, see *Illustrative Game No. 8*, Dalko - Soria) 10 ♖c2 ♔d7 11 ♖d2 ♖g5 12 ♖e4 ♖f5 13 0-0-0, with the better chances for White.

In Calinescu - Dodu, Predeal 1989, Black pre-

ferred 7 ... ♖e7, and there followed 8 h4 (8 ♖e2 0-0 9 h4 g4 10 ♖f4 was not bad either) 8 ... g4 9 ♖e2 ♔h6 (on 9 ... d6, White could continue 10 ♖c2, then ♖d2, 0-0-0 and ♖f4) 10 ♖c2 ♖bc6; now White could have gained a clear advantage by means of 11 ♖g3! d6 (11 ... ♖b4 12 ♖d2) 12 ♖d2 ♔e6 13 ♖f5.

In the diagrammed position, 6 ... ♖bc6 has also been seen. White then gains nothing from 7 ♖f3 ♔g7 8 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 9 e3 (as in Gligoric - Fuderer, Yugoslavia 1948/9), in view of 9 ... g4! followed by ... ♖g5. Instead of 7 ♖f3, White should play 7 e3!, threatening 8 f4. A game Reefschläger - Kamaras, Budapest 1985, then continued 7 ... ♔b4 (if 7 ... ♖e7, White plays 8 ♖e2, renewing the threat of f2-f4, while 8 ... g4 is met by 9 ♖f4) 8 ♖f3 d6 9 ♖xe5 de 10 ♖a4 ♖e7 11 a3 ♔d6 12 b4 ♖e6 13 c5 ♔e7 14 ♖d2 ♔d7 (14 ... 0-0 was worth considering) 15 ♔c4 ♖g4 (15 ... ♖f5 may be better) 16 ♖b3 f6, and after 17 ♔f7+ ♖f8 18 h3! Black was faced with serious difficulties.

6 ... ♔g7

After 6 ... ♖xf3+ 7 gf ♔g7 8 ♔c3, White has a clear plus.

7 ♖xe5

A manoeuvre we have seen before, 7 ♖c1 h6 8 h4, also looks good here. For example, a game Barcza - Kluger, Hungary 1937, continued 8 ... g4 9 ♖xe5 ♕xe5 10 ♕c3 ♖c6 11 ♖e3 ♖e7, and after 12 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 13 ♖xh4 d6 14 g3 White obtained clearly the better position. Another unsatisfactory line is 8 ... g4 9 ♖xe5 ♕xe5 10 ♕c3 ♖e7 11 g3, with the better chances for White.

7 ... ♕xe5

8 ♕c3 ♖e7

9 ♕xe5

9 e3 also deserves attention; Black replies 9 ... d6 10 ♕e2 ♖c6, and now:

a) In O'Kelly - Drimer, Havana 1968, White played the inaccurate 11 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 12 ♖c3 ♕e6 13 ♖d2 0-0-0 14 0-0, and after 14 ... g4! 15 ♖d5 h5 16 ♖ad1 ♖b8, Black seized the initiative.

b) In Donner - Drimer, Havana 1969, White continued with 11 ♖d2, and after 11 ... ♕f5 12 f4 g4 13 e4 ♕xc3 14 ♖xc3 0-0-0 15 0-0 ♖de8 he could have obtained the better prospects with 16 ♕f3! (instead, the game went 16 ♕h5 ♕g6 17 ♕f3 f5! 18 ♖d5 ♖g7! with equal chances). However, in place of 11 ... ♕f5, Black could have played 11 ... ♕e6! maintaining approximate

equality.

c) There is, nonetheless, a way for White to sustain the initiative: 11 ♖b3! (hampering Black's queenside development) 11 ... 0-0 12 ♖d2 (but not 12 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 13 ♖c3 ♖a5!) 12 ... ♕xc3 13 ♖xc3, and White's chances remain preferable (authors' analysis)

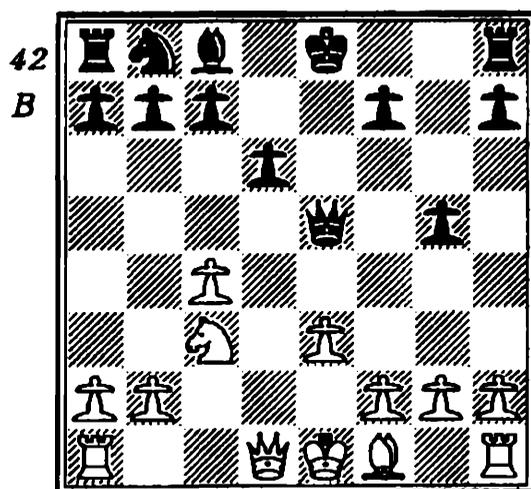
9 ... ♖xe5

10 ♖c3 d6

In a game Szegedi - Boros, Hungary 1937, Black decided to fianchetto his bishop: 10 ... ♖c6 11 e3 b6 12 ♕e2 ♕b7. However, after 13 ♕f3 0-0-0 14 ♖a4 ♖b8 15 0-0-0, White obtained a plus.

If 10 ... b6 immediately, then 11 e3 ♕b7 12 h4 looks good.

11 e3 (42)



In this critical position Black is at a loss for an equalising line. For example, on 11 ... ♕e6 White has the unpleasant 12 ♖b3!, and if 12 ... b6, then after 13

♗d5 ♕xd5 14 cd he gains a clear advantage; Ivkov - Drimer, Raach 1970. On the other hand if 12 ... ♗d7, ECO recommends 13 ♖xb7 ♗b8 14 ♖xc7 ♗xb2 15 ♗c1, followed by ♕e2 and 0-0, retaining a material plus with a good position.

11 ... ♗a6 discourages 12 ♖b3 in view of 12 ... ♗c5 with a good game for Black, while 12 ♖h5 can be met by 12 ... ♕e6 13 h4 g4 14 ♖xe5 de 15 0-0-0 h5 with equality. White does better to reply with 12 h4! g4 13 ♕e2 h5 14 ♖d5 ♗c5 15 0-0-0 ♕e6 16 ♖xe5 de 17 b4 (17 ♗b5 ♗a6 18 ♗d2 is not bad either) 17 ... ♗d7 18 ♗b5 ♗d8 19 a3, retaining the better prospects (authors' analysis).

B

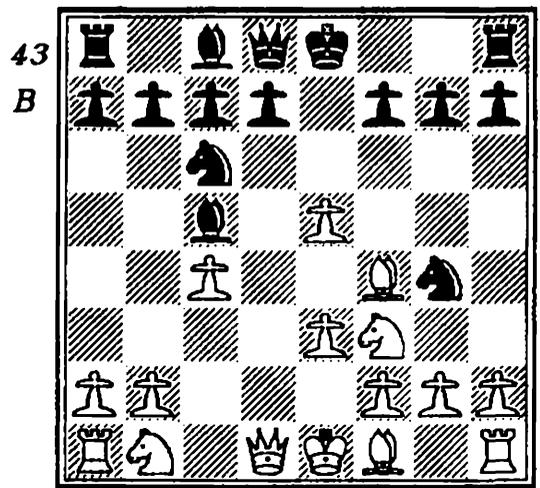
4 ... ♗c6
5 ♗f3 ♕b4+ (44)

Some other continuations are also seen here, but are considerably weaker. For example:

a) 5 ... ♕c5 6 e3 gives the following position (43), in which Black has three replies to choose from:

a1) 6 ... ♕b4+ 7 ♗bd2 ♖e7 8 a3; returning the gambit pawn, White acquires a clear advantage.

a2) 6 ... f6 7 ef ♖xf6 8 ♖d2 d6. A game Dobias -



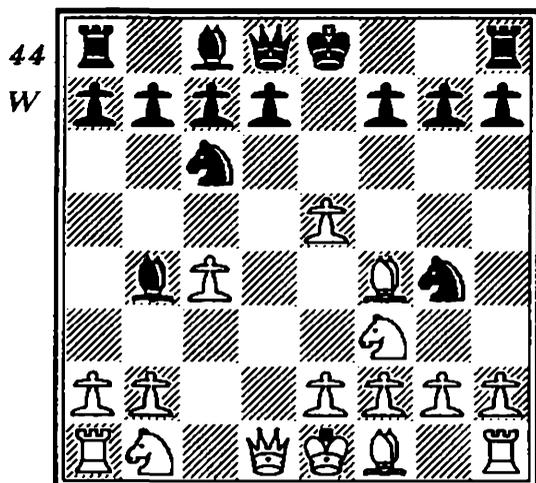
Zita, Prague 1933, now continued 9 ♗c3 ♕e6 10 ♗e4 ♖f5 11 ♗xc5 ♖xc5 12 ♕e2, and Black has no compensation for the pawn.

a3) 6 ... ♖e7. White now has various ways of gaining the advantage, for example: 7 a3 ♗gxe5 8 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 9 b4 ♕d6 10 ♗c3!; or 7 ♕e2 ♗gxe5 8 ♗c3 ♕b4 9 ♖d2 d6 10 a3 ♕xc3 11 ♖xc3 a5 12 c5, as in Allegro - Berend, Groningen 1984/5; or finally, 7 ♗c3 ♕b4 8 ♗c1 (in fact 8 ♖b3!, maintaining the pawn, is even more effective) 8 ... 0-0 9 ♕e2 ♗gxe5 10 0-0 ♕xc3 11 ♗xc3, as in Bagirov - Shabalov, Jurmala 1985.

b) Nor is there any promise in 5 ... f6 6 ef ♖xf6 7 ♖d2 ♕b4 8 ♗c3 ♕xc3 9 bc d6 10 e3. A game Bogoljubow - Eliskases, match 1939, continued 10 ... b6 11 ♕e2 ♕b7 12 0-0 ♗e7 13 ♗d4 ♗e5, and now 14 ♗b5! would have secured a clear advantage. The alternative

10 ... ♕e6 is no better: 11 ♖d4 ♕d7 12 ♕e2 ♖ge5 13 0-0, with an obvious advantage, van Scheltinga - Larsen, Beverwijk 1961.

We now return to the main line (5 ... ♕b4+):



White has two continuations that we shall examine in detail:

- B1 6 ♖c3
B2 6 ♖bd2

White achieves nothing with 6 ♕d2, since after 6 ... ♖e7 7 a3 ♕xd2+ 8 ♖xd2 ♖gxe5 9 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 10 e3 b6 11 ♖c3 ♕b7, the chances are even.

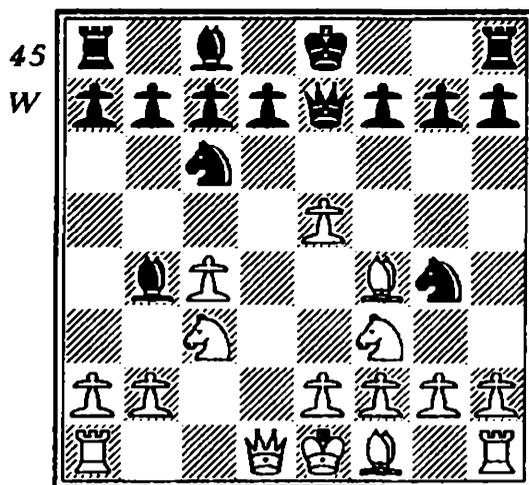
- B1
6 ♖c3

The move preferred by Bogoljubow. White aims to maintain the gambit pawn, at the cost of weakening his pawn structure.

- 6 ... ♖e7 (45)

In former times this move was played automa-

tically. In actual fact, it constitutes a major inaccuracy. The sole correct method is 6 ... ♕xc3+! 7 bc ♖e7, which transposes into the main line after 8 ♖d5.



- 7 ♖d5

Returning the favour.

On 7 ♕g5, Schlechter recommended 7 ... ♖c5. A dubious line is 7 e3 ♕xc3+ 8 bc ♖gxe5 9 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 10 ♕e2; in Toran - Heidenfeld, Beverwijk 1953, the continuation was 10 ... d6 11 ♖d4 b6 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♖ad1 ♖g6 14 ♕g3 ♕b7 15 f3 f5, with advantage to Black. However, in the diagrammed position, White has three (!) ways of obtaining the better game. All he has to do is prevent the doubling of his pawns:

a) 7 ♖c2 ♖gxe5 8 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 9 a3 ♕xc3+ 10 ♖xc3 d6 11 c5, with a positional advantage (Gligoric).

b) 7 ♖b3 ♖a5 8 ♖c2 ♖xc4 9 a3! (distinctly stronger than 9 0-0-0, as played in

Eisinger - Rutz, Karlsruhe 1919) 9 ... ♕a5 10 b4 ♕b6 11 e3 ♖cxe5 12 ♖d5, with an obvious advantage; Donaldson - Haessler, USA 1988. An improvement was 7 ... ♕a5 8 e3 ♖gxe5 9 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 10 ♕e2 0-0 11 0-0 ♕xc3 12 ♖xc3 d6, but even so, White's chances are preferable after 13 c5.

c) 7 ♖c1 ♖gxe5 8 ♖xe5 ♖xe5, and now:

c1) In Ivkov - Mestrovic, Sarajevo 1967, White played the routine 9 e3 0-0 10 ♕e2 d6 11 0-0 ♕xc3 12 ♖xc3, which was met by 12 ... b6 13 e4 ♕b7 14 ♖e3 ♖fe8 15 ♖e1 ♖f6 16 ♕g3 ♖g6!, and Black stabilised the position, attaining a satisfactory game.

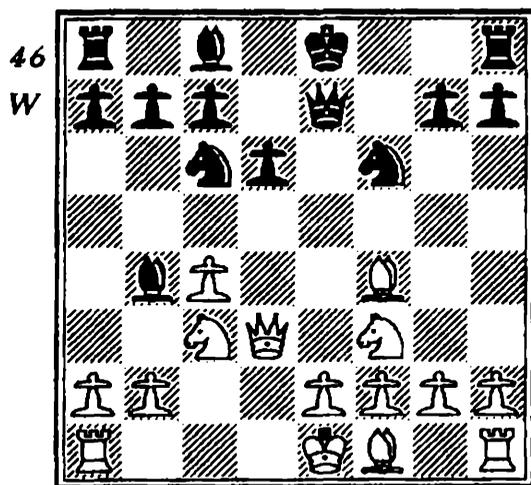
c2) 9 a3! ♕xc3+ 10 ♖xc3 is considerably better. Salov - E. Pandavos, Athens 1985, continued as follows: 10 ... d6 (10 ... b6 is a mistake on account of 11 ♖d5) 11 g3?! (in our view, a much more effective line is 11 c5! dc 12 ♖d5, with an obvious advantage) 11 ... 0-0 (after 11 ... ♕d7 12 ♕g2 ♕c6 13 ♕xe5, White retains a plus) 12 ♕g2 ♖g6?! (in our opinion Black should have played 12 ... ♖b8! at once, aiming to meet 13 c5 with 13 ... ♖d8; If 13 0-0 then Black has 13 ... b6, or even 13 ... f6 14 ♕d5+ ♖f7, with a defensible

position) 13 ♕c1 ♖b8 14 b3 ♕e6 15 0-0 ♖d7 16 ♖e1 ♖fe8 17 ♕b2 f6 18 ♖d2 ♖e5 19 f4 ♖c6 20 ♖d3 ♖f7 21 h3 a5 22 g4, and White gradually realised his advantage.

We now come back to the main line (7 ♖d5).

7 ... ♕xc3+

Here Mieses suggested 7 ... f6 8 ef ♖xf6 (8 ... ♕xc3+ leads to variation B12) 9 ♖d3 d6, giving the position below (46):



Let us look at some examples from tournament practice:

a) 10 ♖d2 0-0 11 g3 ♕g4 12 ♕g2 ♖ae8 13 f3 ♕f5 (according to Tartakower, 13 ... ♕xc3! 14 bc ♕e6, followed by ... ♖d7, is more effective) 14 e4 g5! 15 ♕xg5 ♖xe4, with enough compensation for the sacrificed material: Spielmann - Réti, Vienna 1921.

b) 10 e3 ♖e4, and now:

b1) In Higashi - Yabra, Siegen Olympiad 1970, White played 11 ♖c2?, and

after 11 ... g5! (Bogoljow only examined 11 ... 0-0 12 ♖g3 ♕f5 13 ♕d3, with advantage to White) 12 ♖g3 ♕f5 13 ♕d3 h5! Black obtained a formidable attack.

b2) In Hooper - Mieses, Blackpool 1944, White tried 11 ♖d2 ♕f5 12 ♖dxe4 ♕xe4 13 ♖d2 0-0 14 0-0-0, which again gave Black positional compensation for the pawn after 14 ... ♖f6 15 f3 ♖g6.

c) 10 ♕d2 occurred in a game Landau - Veerkamp, Holland 1940. Black continued imprecisely with 10 ... 0-0? 11 e3 g6 12 ♕e2 ♕f5, and after 13 ♖d5! ♖xd5 14 ♖xd5+ ♖h8 15 ♖d1 ♕e4 16 ♖g5, he obtained no compensation for the pawn. However, with 10 ... g6 or 10 ... ♖g4, he could have acquired adequate counterplay (authors' analysis).

We now revert to the main line (7 ... ♕xc3).

8 bc

Black's replies are:

B11 8 ... ♖a3

B12 8 ... f6

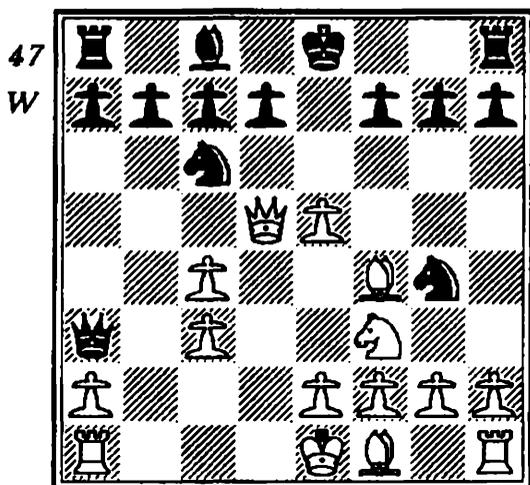
B11

8 ... ♖a3 (47)

Immediately attacking the pawn weaknesses.

9 ♖c1

In addition to this, the most popular continuation, some other replies have



been seen in practice. For example:

a) 9 ♕d2 f6 (9 ... ♖b2 is also playable, but the text move is sharper and more promising) 10 e3 (according to Kmoch, 10 e6 is met by 10 ... h5) 10 ... ♖xf6 11 ♖d3 0-0 12 e3 (12 e4 ♖b2) 12 ... d6 13 ♕e2 ♖c5, and the threat of ... ♕f5 gives Black a clear plus (Schlechter).

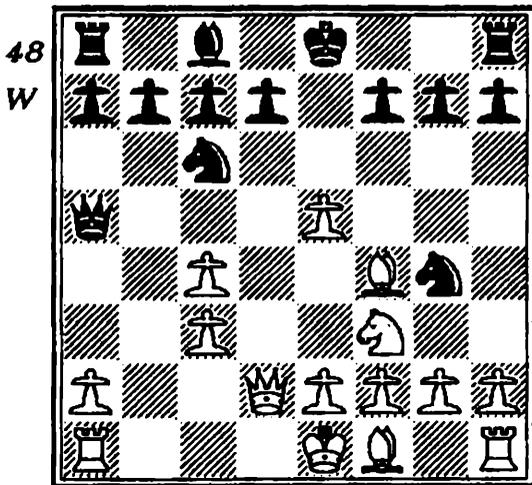
b) 9 ♖d3, and now:

b1) Mieses recommended 9 ... ♖c5 10 e3 ♖a5. If White replies 11 ♖b1 a6 12 c5, then after 12 ... ♖xc5! 13 h3 ♖h6 14 ♕xh6 gh 15 ♖c4 ♖a5 Black gains the advantage.

b2) In his game against Rubinstein, Berlin 1918, Mieses played differently: 9 ... ♖a5 10 ♖c1 ♖gxe5 (in our view, 10 ... 0-0 was worth considering here, since the pawn won't run away) 11 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 12 ♖g3 d6 13 ♖xg7 ♖g6 14 h4 (ECO gives 14 e4, with a supposedly clear advantage, but Black can reply 14 ... ♕e6,

as in the game) 14 ... h5 15 e4 ♕e6 16 ♖g5 ♗d7 17 f4 ♖ae8 18 ♕e2 ♗xa2!, and Black obtained the advantage.

c) 9 ♗d2 ♗a5! (Bogoljubow - Tartakower, Kissingen 1928, went 9 ... ♗c5 10 e3 ♗a5 11 ♖b1 a6 12 c5 ♗xc5 13 h3 ♖h6 14 ♕d3 ♖g8 15 0-0 ♖ge7 16 ♖fd1, and now, according to Nimzowitsch, Black could have offered adequate resistance with 16 ... 0-0!; earlier, if 13 ... ♖gxe5, then after 14 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 15 ♗d4 White's advantage is obvious), and we reach the following position (48), in which White has various replies to be examined:



c1) 10 h3 ♖gxe5 11 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 12 ♗d4 d6 13 c5 ♕e6, and Black's chances are to be preferred.

c2) 10 c5 ♗xc5 11 e3 ♗a5, and, after the ensuing capture on e5, White remains a pawn down.

c3) 10 ♖c1 ♖gxe5 (10 ...

0-0!? also deserves attention) 11 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 12 ♗d4 d6 (another playable line is 12 ... f6 13 c5 0-0 14 ♖xe5 fe 15 ♗xe5 ♗xa2 16 g3 ♗f7 17 ♗d4 d5 18 cd cd 19 ♖g2 ♕e6 20 0-0 d5, with a good game) 13 c5 ♕e6, and in view of the variations 14 ♖xe5 de 15 ♗xe5 0-0, and 14 cd cd 15 ♗xd6 ♖c4, Black has a clear plus.

So the main line with 9 ♖c1 is objectively White's strongest.

9 ... f6

A resolute move - Black gambits his pawn 'for good'. He does, though, have other possibilities at his disposal:

a) 9 ... d6 10 ed ♕e6 11 ♗b5 0-0 occurred in Rotherstein - Richter, Berlin 1928; White could now have gained a clear plus with 12 h3!

b) 9 ... ♖e7 10 ♗d2 ♖g6, and now:

b1) A game Gheorghiu - Shipman, USA 1979, went 11 ♖g3 h5 12 h3 h4 13 ♕f4, and White retained his pawn with a good position. In our view, an improvement on 11 ... h5 is 11 ... f6 12 ef ♖xf6, and if 13 ♖xc7, then after 13 ... ♖e4 14 ♗e3 0-0 15 ♖g3 d6 Black's positional pressure compensates for the sacrificed material.

b2) 11 e3 is best answered

by 11 ... ♘xf4 12 ef b6, with definite compensation for the pawn.

b3) 11 h3 ♘xf4 12 ♙xf4 (12 hg ♘e6 13 e3 was evidently more accurate, giving White a slight edge) 12 ... ♘h6 13 e4 0-0 14 ♙d3. *ECO* assesses this position as clearly favourable to White. However, with 14 ... ♙xa2, followed by ... f7 - f6, Black can obtain effective counterplay (authors' analysis).

c) 9 ... ♙xa2 10 h3 ♘h6 (formerly it was taken for granted that this line clearly favoured White; in actual fact it is perfectly playable) 11 e4 (in Kamenets - Mikh. Tseitlin, Moscow regional Ch. 1979, White played 11 ♙xh6 gh 12 g4 ♙b2 13 ♙d1 a5 14 ♖c2, to which Black replied 14 ... ♙b1+ 15 ♙d2 a4 16 ♙g2 ♙b6, obtaining adequate counter-chances) 11 ... ♙a3! (by way of a 'refutation' of Black's chosen variation, *ECO* points to the game Gligoric - Westerinen, Venice 1971, which went 11 ... ♘g8? 12 c5! ♙a3 13 ♙c4 ♘d8 14 ♙e3! ♘e7 15 ♙d1 b6 16 0-0 bc, and after 17 ♙d3 ♙a5 18 ♖b1 c6 19 ♖a1 ♙c7 20 ♙xc5, White obtained a winning position; in this line, 15 ... ♘e6 is met by 16 0-0, and 16 ... ♘e6 by 17 ♙c2) and now:

c1) 12 c5 b6 13 e6 fe 14 ♙d2 ♙xc5 15 ♙xh6 gh 16 ♙xh6 ♙b7, and Black's chances are to be preferred.

c2) 12 e6 de! 13 ♙d2 ♙a5 14 ♙xh6 gh 15 ♙xh6 ♙c5, and Black's position is at least no worse.

c3) 12 ♙d2 ♙c5 13 ♙xh6 gh 14 ♙xh6 ♘xe5 15 ♙f6 (if 15 ♙g7, then 15 ... ♘xf3+ 16 gf ♖f8, with the better position for Black) 15 ... ♘xf3+ 16 ♙xf3 d6, and once again Black has good counterchances (authors' analysis).

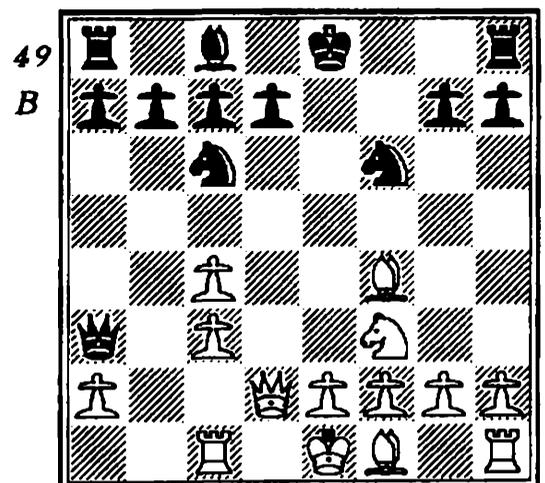
We now return to the main line (9 ... f6).

10 ef

On 10 e6, Black has 10 ... de 11 ♙h5+ g6 12 ♙xg4 e5 13 ♙h4 ef 14 ♙xf4 0-0, with somewhat the better chances despite the pawn minus (Schlechter).

10 ... ♘xf6

11 ♙d2 (49)



11 ... d6

An alternative is 11 ... 0-0, upon which Vukovic

recommended 12 e3 (if 12 ♖xc7, then 12 ... ♗e4) 12 ... d6 (12 ... ♗e4 is worse in view of 13 ♖c2 d6 14 ♖d3 ♖f5 15 0-0 ♗ae8 16 ♗h4! - Bogoljubow) 13 ♖d3 (13 ♗d4 is weak on account of 13 ... ♗xd4; see Rubinstein - Vidmar, in the preface). From this position Bogoljubow continued the analysis as follows: 13 ... ♗e5 14 ♖xe5 de 15 ♗xe5 ♗d8 16 0-0 ♖e7 17 ♗f3! ♖f5 18 ♗d4 ♖xd3 19 ♖xd3 c5 20 ♗f5 ♖e6 21 ♖b1, and Black has no compensation for the material deficit. However, instead of 13 ... ♗e5, Black can play 13 ... b6! 14 ♗d4 ♖c5! 15 ♗b3 (15 0-0 ♗e5) 15 ... ♖h5 16 ♖e2 ♖h4 17 ♖g3 ♖h6, with adequate counterplay (authors' analysis).

Instead of 12 e3, a mistake would be 12 ♗d4?, which according to Kabilov's analysis succumbs to a direct attack: 12 ... ♗e4 13 ♖e3 ♗xf4! 14 ♖xf4 ♗xd4 15 cd (15 f3 is met by 15 ... g5 16 ♖e3 ♗f5!, or 16 ♖xe4 ♖xc1+ 17 ♖f2 ♗e6) 15 ... d5!, with unanswerable threats. For example: 16 c5 (16 cd ♖d7) 16 ... ♖d7 17 c6 ♖xc6 18 ♗xc6 bc, and mate is unavoidable; or 16 ♖e3 (16 f3 g5) 16 ... ♖b4+ 17 ♖d1 ♖d7, and Black wins.

12 ♗d4

12 e3 is answered by 12 ...

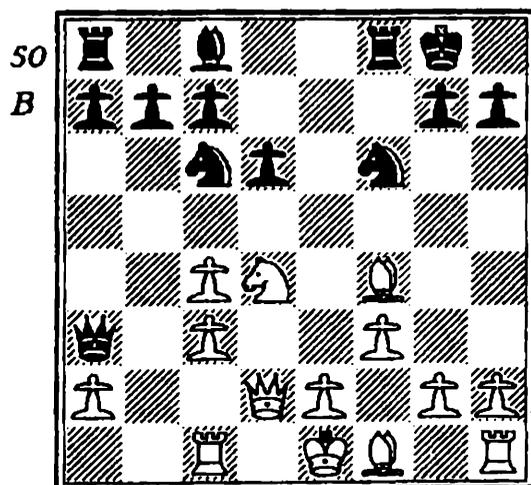
♖f5, with ... ♗e4 to follow, giving Black a clear advantage (Bogoljubow).

12 ... 0-0

According to Bogoljubow, 12 ... ♗e5 is inadequate on account of 13 e3 ♖d7 14 ♗b5, "and already Black's attack is repulsed." It is hard to agree with this assertion, since in place of 13 ... ♖d7 Black has the stronger 13 ... a6! 14 ♖e2 ♗e4 15 ♖c2 ♗c5, and if 16 ♗b3, then after 16 ... 0-0 17 0-0 ♖f5 the black pieces become very active (authors' analysis).

13 f3 (50)

In Rubinstein - Vidmar, Berlin 1918, White played 13 e3? which resulted in a catastrophe, as we showed in the preface.



For a long time, no effective plan of counterplay was discovered for Black in this critical position. For example, the Collijn brothers' treatise gives the variation 13 ... ♖d7 14 e4 ♗ae8 15

♚e2 ♖e5 16 ♖b1, which clearly favours White. A game Rodl - Althoff, Weidenau 1947, went 13 ... ♖a5 14 e4 ♚a4 15 ♖b5!, which likewise gave White a clear plus.

The correct method did, however, come to light. In a game Holford - Heidenfeld (1946) the continuation was 13 ... ♖e5! 14 e4 ♚c5 15 ♖b3 ♚c6 and after 16 c5? (better 16 ♚d4, to which Black would probably reply 16 ... ♖fg4) Black unexpectedly brought off a piece sacrifice: 16 ... ♖xe4! 17 ♚e3 ♖g6 18 ♚d3 ♖xf4, gaining an obvious advantage.

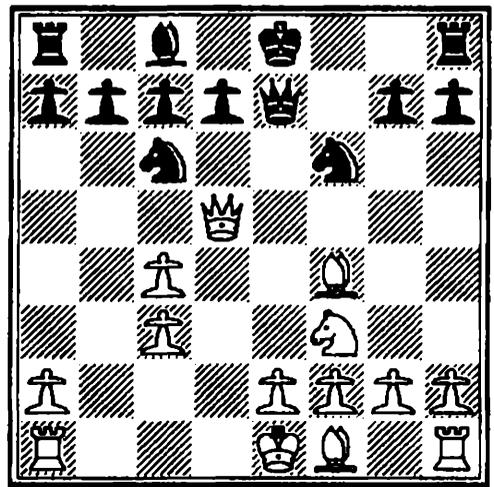
B12

8 ... f6
9 ef

In Korody - Pongratz, Budapest 1938, 9 e6 (M Levitt's move) was answered by 9 ... g5?!, and there followed: 10 ♚xc7 de 11 ♚d6 e5 12 h4 e4 13 ♖d4 e3 14 ♚xe7+ ♚xe7 15 f3 ♖ge5 16 hg fg 17 ♖xc6+ ♖xc6 18 ♖b1, with advantage to White. But ever since Schlechter's day it has been known that instead of 9 ... g5 Black should play 9 ... de! 10 ♚h5+ g6 11 ♚xg4 e5 12 ♚g3 ef 13 ♚xf4 0-0, with a good game.

9 ... ♖xf6 (51)

White has two replies



that we shall examine in detail:

B121 10 ♚d1

B122 10 ♚d3

10 ♚d2 d6 has also been played. In Stahlberg - Richter, Swinemünde 1930, the continuation was 11 ♖d4 0-0 12 f3 ♚d7 13 e4, when Black obtained a clear plus by means of 13 ... ♖xe4! 14 fe ♖xd4 15 ♚d3 ♖e6. In Broeck - Trajkovic, Vienna 1953, White preferred 11 e3, and Black continued 11 ... 0-0 12 ♚d3 ♖e5 13 0-0 ♖xf3+ 14 gf ♚h3 with sufficient compensation for the pawn. In place of 11 ... 0-0, a more convincing line was 11 ... ♖e4! 12 ♚c2 g5! 13 ♚g3 ♚f5 14 ♚d3 h5, with advantage to Black (authors' analysis).

B121

10 ♚d1 d6

11 e3 0-0

11 ... ♖e4 12 ♖c1 0-0 13

♗e2 leads to the main line by transposition.

12 ♗e2

A good answer to 12 ♗d3 is 12 ... ♖e5!. In Baikov - S. Ivanov, Leningrad 1987, Black played instead 12 ... ♗g4, which led to a series of exchanges: 13 h3 ♗xf3 14 ♖xf3 ♖e5 15 ♖e2 ♖xd3+ 16 ♖xd3 ♖e4 17 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 18 f3 ♖c5 19 0-0-0 a5, and a draw was soon agreed.

12 ... ♖e4

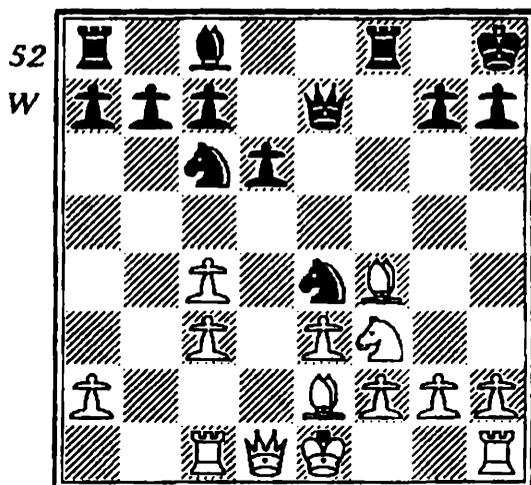
13 ♖c1 ♖h8 (52)

Another line deserving consideration is 13 ... ♗g4 14 0-0 ♖h8. Campos - Akesson, Valjevo 1984, continued 15 ♗g3 ♖a5 16 ♖d4 ♖ae8 17 ♖fe1 b6 18 ♗d1 ♖f7 19 ♖g5 ♖xg5 20 ♖xg4 ♖e4 21 ♗a4 ♖e6 22 ♖e2 ♖f6 23 f3 ♖xg3 24 hg ♖g5, and Black gained a clear advantage (there followed 25 ♖f2 ♖h6 26 ♗d7 ♖xc4 27 f4 ♖g6 28 g4 ♖e5 29 ♗f5 ♖xf5 30 gf ♖h5, with an easy win).

A better reply to 14 ... ♖h8 is 15 h3 ♗h5 16 g4 ♗g6 17 ♖d4, as in Miralles - Lev, Groningen 1985/6; but even so, by playing 17 ... ♖e5, Black obtains sufficient compensation for the pawn.

Now in answer to 14 0-0, Black starts a powerful attack with 14 ... g5 (see *Illustrative Game No. 9*, Inkirov - Djukic).

To avert this, White



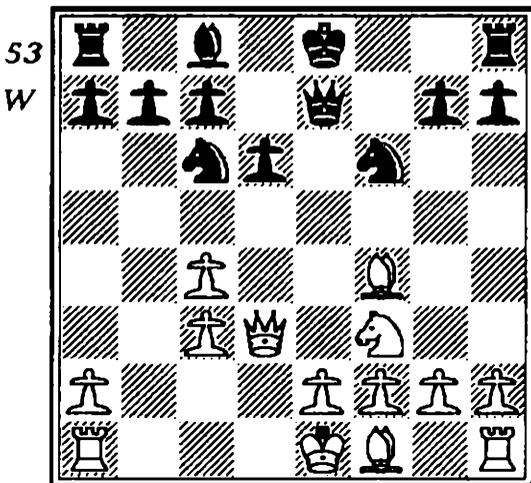
played 14 ♗g3 ♗g4 15 ♖d4 in Campos - Rogers, Valjevo 1984. The game continued 15 ... ♗xe2 16 ♖xe2 ♖e5 17 ♖b3 b6 18 0-0 ♖xg3 19 hg ♖e6 20 ♖d2 ♖ae8 21 f3 ♖g6 22 g4 a5 23 e4 ♖g8 24 ♖e3 ♖f7, resulting in a state of dynamic equilibrium.

In the notes to one of these games, 14 ♖d2 was recommended, with the continuation 14 ... ♖c5 15 ♖b3 ♖e4 16 0-0, which favours White. Instead, Black can play 14 ... ♖xd2 15 ♖xd2 ♗e6, attacking White's pawn weaknesses; or he can temporarily sacrifice a piece with 14 ... ♖xf2!? 15 ♖xf2 g5 16 g3 gf 17 ef ♗h3, leading to sharp play. Thus, for example, 18 ♗g4 is dangerous on account of 18 ... ♖xf4+ 19 gf ♖h4+, with advantage to Black (authors' analysis).

B122

10 ♖d3 d6 (53)

The variation 10 ... 0-0 11 ♚xc7 (but not 11 ♚d2? ♜a3, with advantage to Black - see variation B11, note 'a' to White's 9th move) 11 ... d5 12 cd ♜xc7 13 dc bc leads to an unclear position, in which the onus is on Black to demonstrate the correctness of his double pawn sacrifice.



11 e3

Let us look at the alternatives:

a) Dlugy - Horvath, Sharjah 1985, went 11 ♚g5 0-0 (11 ... ♖e5 also deserves attention) 12 e3 ♚g4 (at this point, apart from 12 ... ♖e5 a playable line was 12 ... h6 13 ♚h4 ♜f7, or 13 ♚xf6 ♜xf6 14 ♚e2 ♚e6 15 0-0 ♖a5, with equal chances) 13 ♚e2 ♜f7 14 ♚xf6 ♜xf6 (14 ... gf!?) 15 0-0, and now instead of 15 ... ♜h8 16 ♖d4 ♖e5 17 ♜e4, which gave White a slight edge, Black should have played 15 ... ♚e6, when the chances are about level.

b) 11 g3, and now:

b1) A game Denker - Ke-vitz, USA 1945, went 11 ... ♖e4 (looks very attractive) 12 ♚g2 ♖c5, and after 13 ♜d2 ♖a5 14 0-0 ♖xc4 15 ♜c2 0-0 Black had won the gambit pawn back and obtained good prospects. But White could have played more strongly: 13 ♜e3!, and if 13 ... ♖e6 then 14 ♖g5 with the better chances. Therefore Black would have to be content with 13 ... ♚e6 14 ♚g5 ♜f7 15 ♖d4 h6! 16 ♖xe6 ♖xe6 17 ♚d5 ♜d7 18 ♚xe6+ ♜xe6 19 ♜xe6+ ♜xe6 20 ♚e3 b6 (20 ... ♖e5 21 c5), when White retains his extra pawn but the nature of the position makes a draw seem likely (authors' analysis).

b2) 11 ... 0-0 12 ♚g2 ♚g4 13 0-0 ♜ae8 deserves consideration. In Dlugy - Epishin, New York 1989, the continuation was 14 ♜ae1 ♜h8 15 ♖d4 ♖a5 16 ♚g5 ♜e5 17 ♚xf6 ♜xf6 18 e3 ♚h5 19 ♖b3 ♚g6 20 ♜d4 ♖c6 21 ♜d2 ♜e7 22 e4 ♚f7, with somewhat the better prospects for Black.

11 ... ♖e4

11 ... 0-0 12 ♚e2 ♖e4 amounts to a transposition, although 12 ... ♚g4 is also possible. In Reshevsky - H Olafsson, Reykjavik 1986, Black preferred 12 ... ♖d8!? with the idea of directing

his knight along the route ... ♖e6-c5. There followed 13 c5 d5 (13 ... dc is also playable) 14 c4 ♖e6 (14 ... ♜xc5 15 cd ♖xd5 16 ♜c4 ♖e6 would have given approximate equality) 15 ♕e5 ♖xc5 16 ♜d4 dc, and Black gained the advantage.

12 ♕e2

If 12 ♜c2, Black can immediately start an offensive with 12 ... g5! 13 ♕g3 ♕f5 14 ♕d3 h5.

12 ... 0-0

At this point, in our view, 12 ... ♕f5 13 ♜d5 ♕g6 is worth considering; if then 14 ♕g5, Black has 14 ... ♖xg5 15 ♖xg5 0-0-0, with good counterplay.

13 ♜c2

Some other lines have also been seen, for example:

a) 13 ♖d4, and now:

a1) Djukic recommends 13 ... ♖xf2 14 ♜xf2 g5 15 g3 ♕h3, with unclear complications.

a2) Avtonomov - Pavlenko, Baku 1987, went 13 ... ♕d7 14 0-0 ♖ae8? (better 14 ... ♖c5 followed by 15 ... ♖a5), and after 15 ♖ae1 g5 16 ♕g3 ♖xg3 17 hg White gained the advantage.

a3) In Vukic - Rogers, Reggio Emilia 1983/4, Black preferred 13 ... ♖c5, and there followed 14 ♜d1 (14 ♜c2 would transpose to the

main line) 14 ... ♖e5 15 0-0 ♜h8 16 ♖c1 ♕d7 17 ♜c2 ♜f7 18 ♕xe5 de 19 ♖f3 ♜e7 20 ♖d2 ♕c6 21 ♕f3 e4 22 ♕e2 ♖f6 23 ♖b3 ♖h6 24 ♖xc5 ♜xc5 25 ♖cd1 ♜e5 26 h3 ♜g5 27 ♕g4 ♖g6 28 ♜e2 ♜a5; a draw was now agreed.

b) Gligoric - Wade, Dundee 1967, went 13 0-0 ♕g4 (it was worth considering 13 ... ♖c5, 13 ... ♜h8 or 13 ... ♕f5 14 ♜d5+ ♜h8 15 ♖ac1 g5 16 ♕g3 h5, with chances for both sides) 14 ♖d4 ♖c5 15 ♜d1 ♕xe2 16 ♜xe2 ♖xd4? (an illusion; he should have played 16 ... ♖a5 17 ♖ab1 b6, aiming to win the pawn back in a more favourable manner), and after 17 cd ♖e6 (if 17 ... ♖xf4, then 18 dc dc 19 ♜b2) 18 ♕g3 ♖xd4 19 ♜b2 ♖f5 20 ♜xb7, White retained his extra pawn with a good position.

13 ... ♖c5

The attack with 13 ... g5 14 ♕g3 ♕f5 15 ♕d3 h5 deserves serious consideration.

14 ♖d4 ♖e5

14 ... ♕e6 is weaker; in Cvitan - Djukic, Medulin 1983, there followed 15 0-0 ♖a5 16 ♖b3, with the better chances for White in view of the variation 16 ... ♕xc4 17 ♕xc4+ ♖xc4 18 ♖xc5 dc 19 ♜b3, winning a pawn.

15 0-0 (54)

B2

6 ♗bd2

This solid continuation is the most popular. Returning the gambit pawn, White plays for the advantage of the two bishops without weakening his pawn structure. Many authorities consider this to be his most promising plan. Yet in this line too, Black has sufficient means to obtain an equal game.

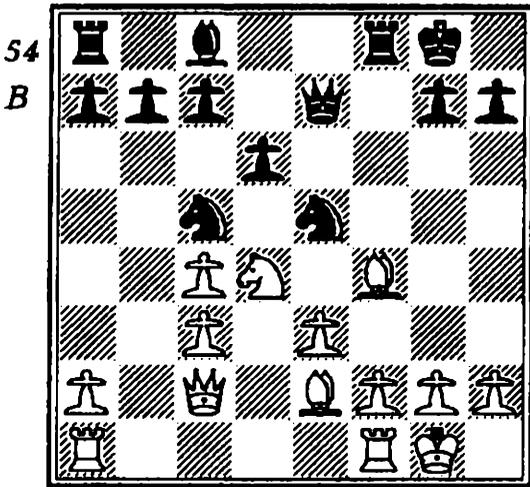
6 ... ♗e7 (56)

6 ... d6?! 7 ed ♗f6 8 e3 ♗xb2 is too risky in view of 9 ♚e2! (but not 9 dc? on account of 9 ... ♗ge5, with dangerous threats) 9 ... cd 10 0-0 ♚f5 (if 10 ... 0-0 or 10 ... ♗ge5, then 11 ♗e4) 11 ♗b3, with the better prospects for White.

Apart from the text move, one other continuation deserves to be considered, although (for some unknown reason) it is rarely played: 6 ... f6, leading to the following position (55):

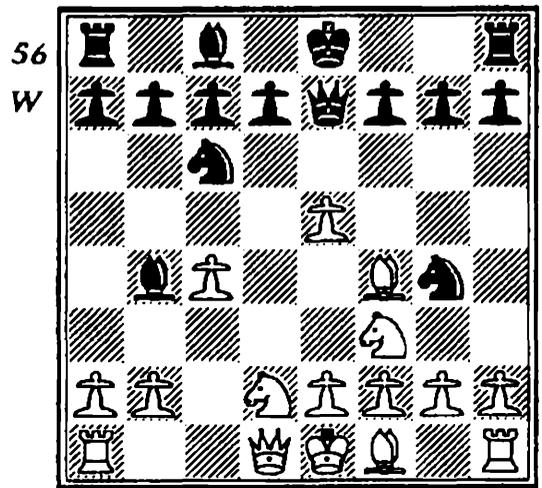
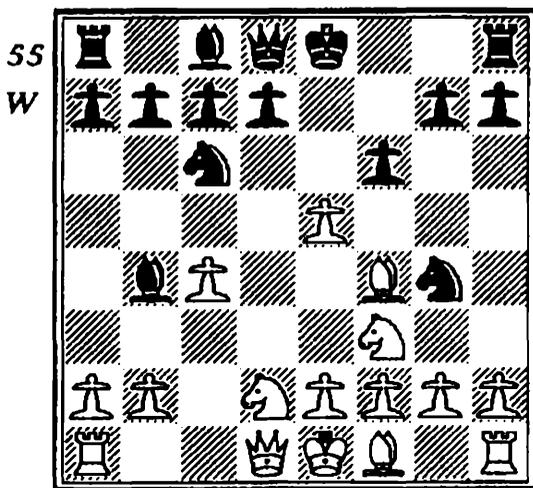
Let us look at White's possible replies:

a) 7 e6 (scarcely to be recommended) 7 ... de 8 h3. In Rietzen - Grünfeld, corr. 1920, the continuation was 8 ... e5 9 hg ef 10 ♗c2 ♚xg4 11 0-0-0 ♗e7 12 ♗xh7 0-0-0 13 ♗xh8 ♗xh8 14 a3 ♚d6 15 ♗e4 ♚e5, with advantage to



This position arose in the classic game Rubinstein - Schlechter, Berlin 1918, which continued: 15 ... ♚d7 16 f3 ♗ae8 17 ♚g3 ♗f7 18 ♚xe5 ♗xe5 (18 ... de 19 ♗b3 ♗e7 was also playable, with chances for both sides) 19 e4 a6 20 ♗ae1 ♚e6, and Black has a sound position despite the pawn minus (Schlechter).

In Dolmatov - Malanyuk, Kiev 1986, Black demonstrated a more clear-cut method: 15 ... ♗f7 16 ♚g3 (16 ♗b3 is met by 16 ... ♚f5, while if 16 ♚xe5 de 17 ♗b3, Black again plays 17 ... ♚f5, with the better prospects) 16 ... ♚d7 (the pawn won't run away) 17 ♗ae1 ♗xc4 18 ♗b3, and the game concluded with a highly original type of repetition: 18 ... ♚f5 19 ♗c1 ♗e4 20 ♗d4 ♚d7 21 ♗c2 ♗c5 22 ♗b3 ♚f5 23 ♗c1 ♗e4 24 ♗d4 ♚d7 25 ♗c2 ♗c5.



Black.

b) 7 a3 ♙xd2+ 8 ♖xd2 fe 9 ♙g3 0-0 with about equal chances.

B21 7 e3
B22 7 a3

c) 7 ef ♖xf6, and now:

B21

c1) 8 ♙xc7 is well answered by 8 ... ♖xb2 (Sozin's 8 ... d6 also merits attention) 9 ♙f4 (but not 9 ♙g3? on account of 9 ... ♖d4!) 9 ... 0-0 10 e3 ♖d4, with at least equality (Tartakower).

7 e3 ♖gxe5
8 ♖xe5 ♖xe5
9 ♙e2 d6

c2) 8 e3 ♖xb2 9 ♙e2 (9 ♖b1 ♖xa2 10 ♙d3 d6 is too risky) 9 ... 0-0 10 0-0 occurred in Popov - Mikh. Tseitlin, Baku 1979. There followed 10 ... d6 11 ♖b3 ♖f6 12 c5 ♖ge5 13 ♖xe5 de 14 ♙g3 ♙e6 15 ♖c2 ♖ad8 16 a3 ♖a5 17 ab ♖xb3 18 ♖ad1 a5 19 ba ♖xa5 20 ♖b2 ♖xd1 21 ♖xd1, with a level game.

9 ... 0-0 10 0-0 ♙xd2 11 ♖xd2 d6 amounts to a transposition.

9 ... b6 is worth considering.

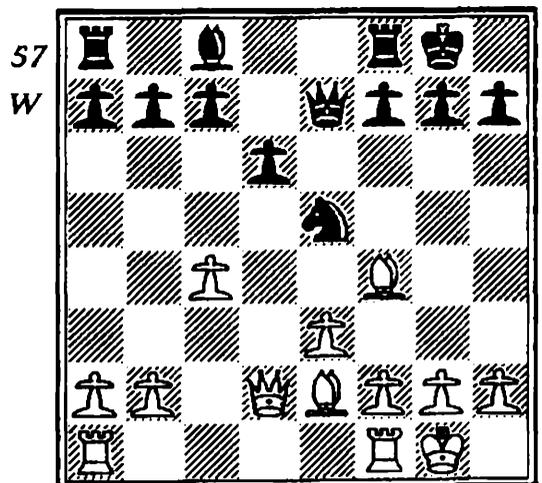
c3) For 8 g3, see *Illustrative Game No. 10* (Rubinstein - Tartakower).

10 0-0 ♙xd2
According to Wedberg and Schüssler, 10 ... 0-0 11 ♖b3 b6 12 a3 ♙c5 gives approximate equality.

To return to the main line (6 ... ♖e7):

11 ♖xd2 0-0 (57)

We shall consider two possibilities for White:



After 11 ... ♙d7 12 ♖c3 f6

(12 ... g5 13 ♕g3 h5 14 f4 is even worse for Black) 13 ♖ac1 ♕c6 14 b4, White's chances are to be preferred; Opocensky - Raud, Parnu 1937.

12 ♖fd1

Some alternatives should be examined:

In answer to the waiting move 12 ♕g3, Black does best to play 12 ... b6, although 12 ... h5!? also deserves consideration. In Glek - Forintos, Tallinn 1986, Black played instead 12 ... ♕d7?!, and the continuation was 13 c5! ♕c6 14 cd cd 15 ♖ad1 ♖ad8? (15 ... ♖fd8 was a little better) 16 ♖a5 a6 17 ♖d4 f6 18 ♖fd1 d5 19 e4, with a clear advantage to White.

A game Prudnikova - Stepovaya, Sverdlovsk 1987, went 12 ♖ac1 b6 13 b4 ♖d8 (13 ... ♕b7 is weak in view of 14 c5!, but 13 ... a5!? is quite playable) 14 ♖c3, and now with 14 ... a5! Black would have obtained a satisfactory game.

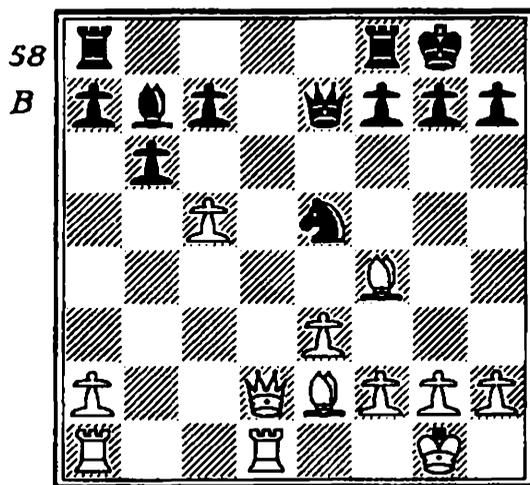
12 a3 transposes to variation B222.

12 ... b6
13 b4

This immediate advance looks more thematic than 13 ♖c3 ♖e8 14 ♖ac1 (14 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 15 ♖xe5 ♖xe5! 16 ♕f3 is more cautious, and leads to equality) 14 ... ♕b7 15

♖d2, after Black seized the initiative in Fokin - Gusev, Leningrad 1983: 15 ... ♖g6 16 ♕g3 ♖g5 17 ♕f1 h5 18 h3 ♖e6 19 b4 (too late) 19 ... a5 20 a3 ab 21 ab ♖ae8 22 c5 dc 23 bc, and after 23 ... b5! 24 ♕xc7 ♖h4 25 ♕g3 ♖f3+ 26 gf h4 Black decided the game with a direct attack on the king.

13 ... ♕b7
14 c5 dc
15 bc (58)



In this position, the variations 15 ... ♖fd8 16 ♖c3, and 15 ... ♖xc5 16 ♖ac1 ♖e7 17 ♖c3, turn out in White's favour.

For this reason, in Garcia Palermo - Rogers, Reggio Emilia 1985, Black decided on 15 ... ♖g6 16 ♖d7 ♖xd7 17 ♖xd7 ♖xf4 18 ef ♖ac8. The game proceeded: 19 ♕c4 ♕c6! 20 ♖e7 b5 (queenside counterchances arise for Black) 21 ♕b3 a5 22 a3 a4 23 ♕a2 ♖fd8 (Black's position is at least no worse) 24 ♕xf7+ ♖f8 25 ♖ael ♖d1 26

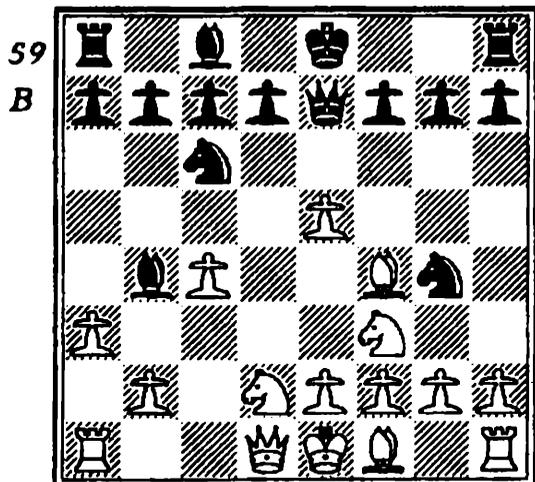
♖xd1 ♜xe7 27 ♕a2 ♖b8 28
 ♖d4 ♖f8 29 ♕b1 ♖d8 30
 ♖xd8 ♜xd8, and now White
 could have saved the end-
 game with 31 ♕xh7! b4 32
 ab ♕d5 33 b5 a3 34 ♕b1 a2
 35 ♕xa2 ♕xa2 36 b6, achiev-
 ing equality.

At move 19, in our opin-
 ion, White could have
 played more strongly: 19
 cb! ab 20 ♖c1 ♖a8 21 ♕c4
 ♕c8! 22 ♖xc7 ♕e6 23 ♖c2
 ♕xc4 24 ♖7xc4 g6 25 ♖b4
 ♖fd8, and although Black is
 a pawn down, the position
 is drawish (authors' ana-
 lysis).

B22

7 a3 (59)

This continuation occurs
 most frequently and is
 considered strongest.



7 ... ♖gxe5

An important finesse. In
 the event of 7 ... ♕xd2+ 8
 ♖xd2 ♖gxe5 9 ♖xe5 ♖xe5,
 White's task is consider-
 ably eased. For example, 10
 c5 (10 ♖c3 d6 11 c5 ♕f5 12 e3

also looks good; Kieninger
 - Ernst, Berlin 1940) 10 ...
 0-0 11 e3 ♖e8 12 ♖c1 a5 13
 ♕e2 ♖f6 14 0-0, with a clear
 advantage; Rubinstein -
 Daniuszewski, Lodz 1927. In
 place of 10 ... 0-0, Tarta-
 kower suggested 10 ... ♖xc5
 11 ♖c1 ♖d6 12 ♖xd6 cd 13 g3
 ♜e7 14 ♕g2 ♖b8 15 0-0 b6 16
 ♖c7 ♕a6 17 ♖xa7 ♕xe2 18
 ♖e1 ♕c4, although in this
 case too, White has the
 better prospects despite
 the pawn minus.

8 ♖xe5

8 e3 ♕xd2+ 9 ♖xd2 ♖xf3+
 10 gf d6 11 ♖g1 led to a
 double-edged, unclear posi-
 tion in van Scheltinga -
 Adema, Holland 1938.

8 ... ♖xe5

9 e3

9 e4 is met by 9 ... ♕c5! 10
 ♕e2 d6 11 ♖b3 ♕b6 12 0-0
 0-0, and Black has no
 difficulties at all (Browne).

9 ... ♕xd2+

This exchange appears
 forced. Practice has also
 seen 9 ... ♕d6 10 ♖e4 ♖xc4
 11 ♖xd6+ ♖xd6 12 ♖c1 ♖e4,
 when White should con-
 tinue with 13 ♖xc7! (in
 Titenko - Mestropov, Mos-
 cow regional Ch. 1987, a
 double-edged position
 arose after 13 ♕xc7 0-0 14
 ♕c4 d6 15 ♕d5 ♕f5! 16 ♕xb7
 ♖c5) 13 ... 0-0 14 ♖d4. In
 Nenashev - Magai, Frunze
 1989, there followed 14 ...

♖e8 15 ♚e2 ♜f6 16 ♜xf6
 ♘xf6 17 ♚f3 d5 18 0-0 b6 19
 ♚e2 ♚e6 20 ♚b5, with the
 better chances for White.

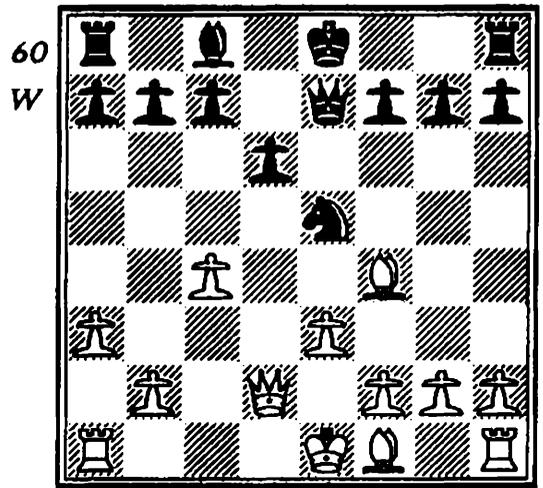
10 ♜xd2 d6 (60)

10 ... f6 11 ♚e2 condemns
 Black to a difficult de-
 fence, for example:

a) In a game Bareyev -
 Menvielle, Spain 1989, Black
 decided to castle queenside:
 11 ... b6 12 0-0 ♚b7 13 b4 c5
 14 ♖fd1 0-0-0. White's
 further conduct of the
 game was highly instruc-
 tive: 15 bc ♜xc5 16 e4 d6 17
 a4 ♜c7 18 a5 ♚xe4 19 ab ab
 20 ♜a2 ♖he8 21 ♚e3 ♚b7 22
 ♖ab1 ♜c6 23 ♖d5 ♘d7 24
 ♚f4 ♘c5 25 ♚g4+ ♜b8 26
 ♚f3, and he quickly realised
 his advantage.

b) A slight improvement
 is 11 ... d6 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♖ac1
 ♚e6. In Belavenets -
 Althausen, Moscow 1941,
 there followed: 14 ♜c3 (14
 e4 and 14 ♚g3 also look
 good) 14 ... ♚f7 (if 14 ...
 ♘f7, then 15 e4 is good,
 while 14 ... c5 is met by 15
 ♚g3) 15 ♚g3 ♖fe8 16 ♖fe1
 ♘d7 17 b4 c6 18 ♖ed1 d5 19
 cd ♚xd5 20 ♚d3 ♘e5 21 ♚c2
 ♚f7 (21 ... ♘f7 22 e4!) 22
 ♖d4, with a positional ad-
 vantage for White.

Opening manuals assess
 this position as favourable
 to White on the basis of
 his bishop pair. However,
 considering the closed na-



ture of the position, White
 faces substantial difficul-
 ties in the realisation of
 this nominal advantage.

For example, a recomm-
 endation of Speelman pro-
 mises nothing to speak of:
 11 c5 (11 ♜c3, then 11 ... b6)
 11 ... dc 12 ♜d5, when Black
 replies 12 ... ♘c6! 13 ♚b5 (13
 ♖c1 is met by 13 ... ♘d4!) 13
 ... 0-0 14 ♚xc6 (14 ♖c1 ♘d4)
 14 ... bc 15 ♜xc6 ♖b8, with a
 fully viable game (authors'
 analysis).

From the diagram, we
 shall examine two possib-
 ilities in detail:

B221 11 ♖c1

B222 11 ♚e2

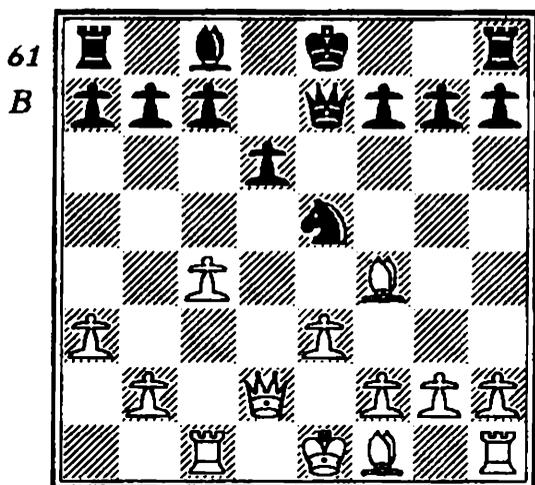
B221

11 ♖c1 (61)

The very latest fashion;
 White starts active opera-
 tions on the queenside at
 once.

11 ... 0-0

In addition to this, it is
 worth considering 11 ...



♖d7, or 11 ... ♖g6 12 ♕g3 b6 (the preliminary 12 ... h5!? is interesting), with counterplay.

A game Sergeyev - Stiap-sky, USSR 1988, went 11 ... b6 12 c5! bc 13 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 14 ♕b5+, and after 14 ... ♖f8 15 0-0! g6 (15 ... ♖b8 is met by 16 ♖a5 ♖e7 17 b4) 16 f4 ♖f6 17 b4, White gained a clear plus. If instead 14 ... ♕d7 15 ♕xd7+ ♖xd7 16 b4 cb 17 ♖xb4, White would again have quite enough for the pawn.

12 c5!? dc

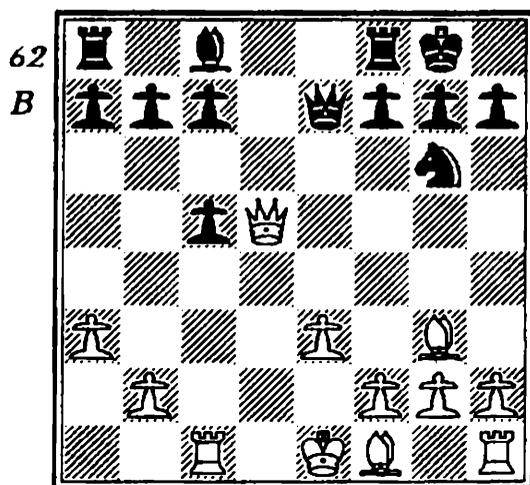
After 12 ... ♖d8 13 cd ♖xd6 (13 ... ♖xd6? 14 ♖a5) 14 ♖xd6, White has a clear positional advantage.

13 ♖d5 ♖g6

14 ♕g3 (62)

If 14 ♕g5?, then 14 ... ♖d6.

Gorelov - Majeric, Bela Crkva 1989, now continued 14 ... ♖d8 15 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 16 ♖xc5 c6 17 ♕e2 ♕e6 18 ♖c2 a5 (18 ... ♖d7 is a little better, but still not entire-



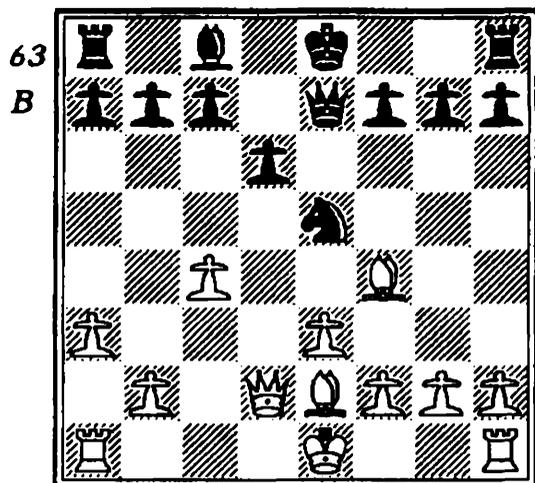
ly satisfactory for Black after 19 ♖d2 ♖ad8 20 ♖xd7), and after 19 ♖d2 a4 20 ♕c7 ♖dc8 21 ♕d6, White acquired an obvious plus. Much the same kind of structure arises from 14 ... c6 15 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 16 ♖xc5, or from 14 ... ♕e6 15 ♖xc5! (but not 15 ♖xb7? on account of 15 ... ♖ab8 16 ♖xc7 ♖xc7 17 ♕xc7 ♖xb2, with the better game for Black) 15 ... ♖xc5 16 ♖xc5, when White can effectively utilise the advantage of the bishop pair.

However, it must not be overlooked that Black has completed his development while White has not yet emerged from the opening. For this reason, now is the time to go into action with 14 ... ♖f6! 15 ♖xc5 (after 15 ♖c3 ♖b6!, with the threat of capturing on b2, Black similarly obtains excellent counterchances) 15 ... ♖xb2 16 ♕xc7 ♕e6 17 ♖c3 ♖a2 18 ♕e2, and after 18 ... ♖h4! 19

♕f3 ♖xf3+ 20 gf ♖ac8, Black's position deserves preference (authors' analysis).

B222

11 ♕e2 (63)



This solid continuation is encountered most often.

11 ... 0-0

Let us consider the alternatives:

a) 11 ... a5 12 ♖c1 0-0 13 b3 b6 (13 ... ♕d7 is answered by 14 c5, with advantage) 14 0-0 ♕b7 15 ♕g3 ♖g6!, followed by f7 - f5 with a defensible position. In Korchnoi - Kaposztas, Berlin 1985, Black instead played 15 ... ♖fe8, which was a barely perceptible inaccuracy allowing Korchnoi to implement a positional bind: 16 ♖c3 ♖d7 17 f3! ♖g5 18 ♕d3 ♖c5 19 ♖b1 ♖h8 20 ♕c2 ♖h5 21 ♖d3 ♖g5 22 ♖e1 ♖f8 23 ♖d4 ♖e7 24 ♖d3 ♖g8 25 ♕h4 ♖e6, and now 26 ♖e2! would be simplest, followed by ♕e1 and

♕c3 with a winning position.

b) 11 ... ♕d7 12 0-0 (if 12 ♖c3, then 12 ... b6), and now:

b1) A game Soderqvist - Larsson, Sweden 1985, continued 12 ... ♖g6 13 ♕g3 (if 13 ♕f3, then 13 ... ♖f6) 13 ... h5 14 h3? (a mistake; 14 f3! was correct, underlining the futility of Black's plan) 14 ... ♖g5 15 ♖h1 ♕c6 16 ♖g1 ♖h4 17 ♕f1 (17 ♕xh4 was a little better) 17 ... ♖f5 18 ♕h2 h4 19 ♖e1 ♖g3+! 20 fg hg 21 ♕xg3 ♖xh3+! and White resigned.

b2) Brinck-Claussen - Ferris, Saloniki 1984, went 12 ... ♕c6 13 ♖d4 f6 14 b4 0-0 15 ♖ac1 b6 16 ♕g3 ♖ad8 17 ♖c3 ♕e4 18 c5 dc 19 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 20 ♖xe5 fe 21 bc ♖d2, with equal chances.

c) 11 ... b6, when White has:

c1) 12 ♕xe5 ♖xe5 13 ♕f3 ♖b8 14 ♕c6+ ♕d7 15 ♕xd7+ ♖xd7 16 0-0 ♖he8 17 b4 ♖e6 18 ♖ad1 ♖be8 19 ♖d5 ♖h6, with complete equality; Botsaris - Radu, Romania 1988.

c2) 12 0-0 ♕b7 (or 12 ... 0-0) 13 b4 0-0 transposes to the main line (note 'c' to White's 13th move). In Bareyev - Mohr, Vidmar Memorial 1989, Black played instead 13 ... ♖g6?! 14 ♕g3 h5, and there followed: 15

f3! h4 16 ♕f2 h3 17 g4 f5 18 gf ♜g5+ 19 ♕g3 ♖h4 20 ♖ad1 ♜xf5 21 e4 ♜h5 22 c5 0-0 23 c6 ♕xc6 24 ♖c1 ♕b7 25 ♖xc7, with a won position for White.

c3) For 12 e4, see *Illustrative Game No. 11* (Browne - Speelman).

12 0-0 b6!

As tournament practice shows, other continuation are not wholly satisfactory for Black. For example:

a) 12 ... ♕d7 13 c5! ♕c6 14 cd cd 15 ♖fd1, with advantage; Kmoch - Duhrrsen, Ebensee 1930.

b) 12 ... ♖g6 13 ♕g3 f5 14 ♖ac1 ♜h8 occurred in Ross-etto - Eidelmann, Sao Paulo 1957; after 15 b4, White has the better chances.

c) 12 ... ♖e8 13 ♜c3 ♕d7 14 ♖ad1 ♕c6 was played in Shestakov - Gusev, Krasnodar 1978; now 15 b4! ♖g6 16 ♕g3 f5 17 c5 gives White a clear plus.

d) 12 ... ♕e6 13 ♖ac1, and now 13 ... f6 would transpose to a position we have examined before, which favours White; see note 'b' to Black's 10th move. If instead 13 ... ♖fd8, then 14 ♕g3, threatening f2 - f4, looks good; Becker - Rahsinger, Linz 1934. Or if 13 ... ♖g6 14 ♕g3 f5 15 ♕f3, White similarly retains the better prospects; Garitani - Rein-

hardt, Argentina 1946.

e) 12 ... ♕f5 also fails to equalise, for example 13 ♕g3 ♕e4 14 b4 ♖fe8 15 f3, followed by e3-e4 with the better chances; Vidmar - Opocensky, Sliac 1932. Alternatively, 13 ♖fd1 ♕e4 14 ♖ac1 ♖g6 15 ♕g3 ♖ad8 16 b4 b6 17 ♜c3 f5 18 c5 bc 19 bc ♜g5 20 cd cd 21 f3 f4 22 ef ♖xf4 23 ♕xf4 ♜xf4 24 ♕c4+ d5 25 ♕b3, with a winning position; Flohr - Richter, Hamburg 1930.

13 ♖ac1

Other continuations have also been seen:

a) 13 ♜c3 ♖g6 14 ♕g3 ♕b7 15 ♖fd1 a5 16 ♕f1 h5 17 h3 ♜g5, with chances for both sides; Arlandi - Klaric, Nuoro 1984.

b) 13 ♕xe5 de (13 ... ♜xe5 is also perfectly playable) 14 ♕f3 e4 15 ♕e2 (15 ♜d5 is risky: 15 ... ef 16 ♜xa8 ♕g4) 15 ... ♖d8 16 ♜c2 c5, with an equal game; Trifunovic - Letelier, Dubrovnik 1950.

c) 13 b4 ♕b7 (13 ... a5? is a mistake in view of 14 c5!, but 13 ... ♖d8 deserves attention) 14 ♕g3 (14 ♜c3 can be met by either 14 ... ♖d7 or 14 ... ♖g6 15 ♕g3 f5) 14 ... ♖d7 (14 ... ♖g6 is playable too). A game Lukacs - Schüssler, Tuzla 1981, now continued 15 ♖fe1 a5 16 ♕f1 f5 17 f3 ♖a7 18 ♜d4 ♖fa8 19 ♖ab1 ab 20 ab

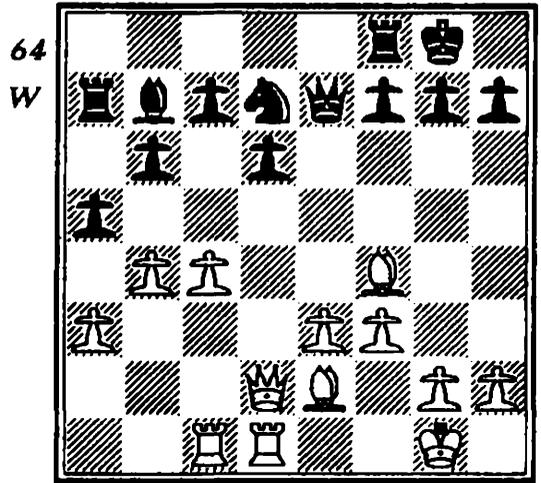
♖a3, and a draw was agreed.

13 ... ♕b7
 14 ♖fd1 a5
 15 b4

15 b3 can be answered by
 15 ... ♖g6 16 ♕g3 f5 17 f3
 ♖g5, with good counter-
 play.

15 ... ♖d7
 16 f3 ♖a7 (64)

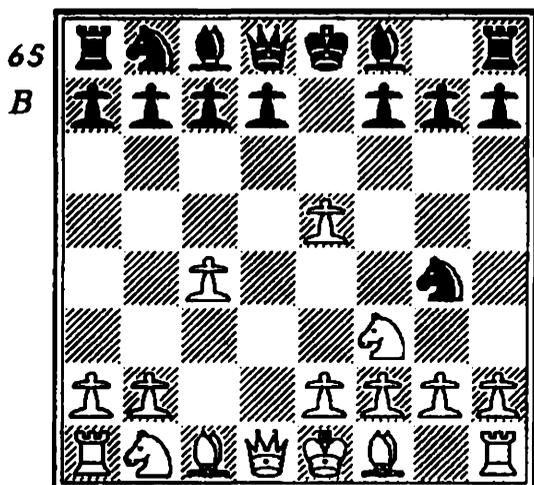
A game Taylor - Hector,
 Reykjavik 1984, continued
 17 c5!? bc 18 ♕b5 ab 19 ab
 ♖b6 20 bc dc 21 e4? ♕a6 22
 ♕xa6 ♖xa6 23 ♕e3 c4 24
 ♕xb6 cb 25 ♖xc4 b5 (White
 has restored material
 equality, but Black's passed
 pawn gives him the advan-
 tage) 26 ♖b4 ♖a7+ 27 ♖cd4



♖a4 28 ♖d6 b4 29 ♖d7 ♖a5,
 and Black won the ending.
 Instead of 21 e4? White
 should have played 21 ♖c3!
 ♖d5 22 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 23 ♖xc5
 ♖xf4 24 ef ♖a5 25 ♖dc1
 ♖fa8 26 ♕d3 ♖xc5 27 ♖xc5
 c6 28 ♕e4 ♖a6, with com-
 plete equality (authors' an-
 alysis).

4) 3 ... ♘g4 4 ♘f3

- 1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♘g4
 4 ♘f3 (65)



In our day this outwardly unassuming continuation is the most popular. Renouncing any attempt to refute the gambit directly, White is counting on the accumulation of small positional advantages - in particular, on the control of d5 and the securing of the long diagonal for his dark-squared bishop.

4 ... ♘c6

Of course Black can head straight for the basic position of the variation by playing 4 ... ♘c5 5 e3 ♘c6, but in choosing the text

move he retains the option of deviating from the main line.

Now and again 4 ... ♘b4+ is played, whereupon the books recommend 5 ♘d2 ♘xd2+ 6 ♘xd2 ♘c6 7 e3 ♘gxe5 8 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 9 ♘e2 d6 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♘c3.

In Sosonko - Hodgson, Wijk aan Zee 1986, there followed 11 ... ♘e6 (11 ... ♘g4 12 f3 ♘e6 does not alter matters) 12 b3 f5 (on 12 ... f6, Sosonko recommends 13 f4 ♘f7 14 e4 c6 15 ♖ad1 ♗e7 16 ♘f3) 13 f4 (13 ♖fd1! is also good), with advantage to White, since the move suggested by Sosonko, 13 ... ♘f7, can be met by 14 e4! c6 15 ♖ad1 ♗e7 (15 ... ♗b6+ 16 ♗d4) 16 ♘f3, retaining a substantial preponderance in the centre.

In place of 11 ... ♘e6, Black appears to have an improvement in 11 ... b6! His chances are then no worse, as shown by a game Knezevic - Mestrovic, Yugoslavia 1980: 12 f4 ♘g4 13

♙f3 ♖b8 14 ♗b5 a6 15 ♗d4 ♜e8 16 ♗c6 ♖b7 17 ♖fe1 ♗f6 18 ♜d4 ♜h8 19 e4 ♜xc6 20 e5 de 21 fe ♜d7 22 ♖ad1 ♜xd4+ 23 ♖xd4 c5 24 ♙xb7 cd 25 ♙xc8 ♖xc8 26 ef gf, with full equality. After 4 ... ♙b4+, then, is White not entitled to count on an advantage? We may answer that he is. Instead of 5 ♙d2, White can do better with 5 ♗bd2! ♗c6 6 e3 ♗gxe5 7 ♗xe5 ♗xe5, and now 8 a3! (stronger than 8 ♙e2, as played in Knaak - Adamski, Sandomierz 1976 - to which Black could have replied 8 ... d5! 9 cd ♜xd5 10 ♜a4+ ♗c6 11 ♙f3 ♜d6 12 0-0 0-0! 13 ♖d1 ♜e7, with a satisfactory game) 8 ... ♙xd2+ 9 ♜xd2, retaining the better prospects (authors' analysis).

5 e3

5 ♜d5 was examined in chapter 1, and 5 ♙f4 in chapter 3. Let us look at some other possibilities:

a) 5 ♗c3 ♗gxe5 6 ♗xe5 ♗xe5. A game Hebden - Hodgson, Guernsey 1985, now continued 7 ♜c2 ♙b4 8 a3 ♙xc3+ 9 ♜xc3 ♜f6! 10 e4 d6 11 ♙e3 b6 12 ♙e2 ♙b7 13 f3 0-0-0, at which point White should have played 14 0-0-0 with roughly equal chances. In the game, 14 0-0? occurred, which led to advantage for Black after

14 ... g5!

b) 5 a3 ♗gxe5 6 ♗xe5 (6 e3 can be answered by 6 ... g6) 6 ... ♗xe5 7 e4. In a game Hansson - Nielsen, Finland 1976, there followed 7 ... ♙e7 8 ♙e2 0-0 9 0-0, and now Black could have obtained a satisfactory game with 9 ... d6! 10 ♗c3 f5! At move 7, it was also worth considering 7 ... d6 8 ♗c3 g6 9 ♙e3 ♙g7, leading to a position with mutual chances.

c) 5 ♙g5 ♙e7 6 ♙xe7 ♜xe7 7 ♗c3 0-0 (7 ... ♗cxe5 8 ♗d5 ♜d8 9 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 10 ♜d4 f6 is also playable) 8 ♗d5 ♜d8 (after 8 ... ♜c5 9 e3 ♗cxe5 10 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 11 b4, White has a clear plus) 9 e3 ♗gxe5 10 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 11 ♙e2 d6 12 0-0 c6 13 ♗c3. We have reached a position similar to one we examined in the notes to Black's 4th move, with the difference that here the white queen has remained on d1 while Black's pawn has moved to c6. This circumstance permits Black to carry out a favourable manoeuvre: 13 ... ♜e7! 14 ♜d4 f5 15 f4 ♗d7! 16 ♖fe1 ♗f6 17 ♖ad1 ♖d8 18 ♙f3 ♜f7 19 c5 d5, with the better game; Züger - Abdelnaby, Dubai Olympiad 1986. In Polugayevsky - Nunn, Biel 1986, Black played the inferior 13 ...

♙e6? 14 b3 ♗a5 (14 ... f5 can be met by 15 ♗d4 ♖f7 16 ♖ad1) 15 ♗d2 (15 ♗d4! ♖ad8 16 f4 is even more convincing) 15 ... ♖ad8 16 f4 ♙g4 17 ♙d1 ♙xd1 18 ♖axd1 ♖g4 19 h3 ♖h6 20 e4, with advantage to White.

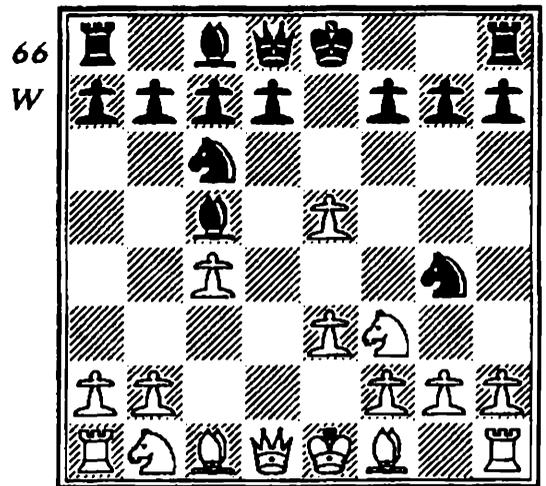
5 ... ♙c5 (66)

Here Black has a final chance to sidestep the main variation (admittedly to no particular advantage) by preparing to develop his bishop on g7. For example, 5 ... g6 (as we have seen, 5 ... ♙b4+ 6 ♖bd2! followed by a2-a3 gives White a plus) 6 ♙d2 (this manoeuvre is ineffective) 6 ... ♙g7 7 ♙c3 0-0 8 ♙e2 ♗e7 9 0-0 ♖gxe5 10 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 (Black has no troubles at all) 11 ♙d4 d6 12 ♖c3 c6 13 e4 g5! 14 ♗d2 ♙e6 15 ♖fe1 ♖ad8 16 b3 a6 17 ♖ad1 ♖h8, with the better prospects for Black; Lipinix - Bisguier, Buenos Aires 1955. In place of 6 ♙d2, it was worth considering 6 e4! ♖gxe5 7 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 8 ♙d2 ♙g7 9 ♙c3 0-0 10 f4 ♖c6 11 ♙xg7 ♖xg7 12 ♗d2, followed by queenside castling, giving White the better chances (authors' analysis).

Practice has also seen 5 ... ♖gxe5 6 ♙e2 (Nimzowitsch gives 6 a3 ♙e7 7 ♙e2 d6 8 ♖c3 0-0 9 ♖d5, with advantage to White; clearly

Black should play 6 ... g6!) 6 ... g6. Sosonko - Ree, Amsterdam 1982, continued 7 ♖c3 ♖xf3+ 8 ♙xf3 ♙g7 9 ♗d2 d6 10 b3 ♖e5 11 ♙b2, and after 11 ... ♖xf3+ 12 gf 0-0 13 0-0-0 ♙h3 (13 ... ♙e6 is simpler) 14 ♖hg1 ♙e6 15 ♖e4 f5 16 ♖g5 ♙xb2+ 17 ♗xb2 ♗f6, the chances were equal. Instead of 7 ♖c3, White has the more promising 7 ♙d2 ♙g7 8 ♙c3 0-0 9 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 10 f4 ♖c6 11 e4! with the better chances (authors' analysis).

Let us return to the main line (5 ... ♙c5):



At first sight the bishop on c5 lacks prospects, being held at bay by the pawn on e3, and is insecure in view of the threat to exchange it by ♖c3 - a4/e4. In reality, posting the bishop here has a deep strategic significance. It holds up the advance of the e- and the f-pawns (assuming the white bishop will go to b2), and thereby se-

cures e5 as a future knight outpost; this in turn will restrict the activity of both White's bishops.

As to the exchanging threat, the bishop may conveniently retreat to a7 or f8, or even in some cases remain on c5 with support from a pawn on b6.

From the basic position (see diagram), we shall look in detail at two continuations for White:

A 6 ♕e2
B 6 a3

But first, there are some other possibilities to consider:

a) 6 g3 ♗cxe5 7 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 8 ♕g2 d6 9 h3 c6 10 ♖e2 ♕e6 11 ♗d2 was played in Wechsler - Taubmann, Bucharest 1934; now 11 ... d5 was simplest, giving equality.

b) 6 ♕d2 ♗gxe5 7 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 8 ♕c3 ♖e7 9 ♕e2 0-0 10 0-0 a5. Tournament practice has shown this position to be fully acceptable for Black, for example: 11 ♗d2 (a game Laszlo - Bakonyi, Hungary 1951, went 11 ♖d2 a4 12 b4 ab 13 ab ♖xa1 14 ♕xa1 d6, with equality) 11 ... ♕b4 (11 ... d6 aiming to meet 12 ♗f3 with 12 ... a4 or 12...♕g4, is also playable) 12 ♖c1 ♖e8 13

a3 ♕xc3 14 ♖xc3 d6 15 e4 f5 16 ef ♕xf5, with a roughly equal game; Litinskaya - Muchnik, Erevan 1985.

c) 6 ♖d5 and now:

c1) Adler - Maroczy, Budapest 1926, continued 6 ... ♖e7 7 ♗c3 ♗gxe5 8 ♕e2 d6 9 ♗e4, and after 9 ... ♕e6 10 ♖d1 ♕b4+ 11 ♕d2 0-0-0 12 ♕xb4 ♗xb4 13 ♖b3 ♗xf3+ 14 ♕xf3 d5 Black had the advantage.

c2) Taimanov suggests the double-edged 6 ... ♗b4!?, since capturing with 7 ♖xc5 ♗c2+ 8 ♖d2 ♗xa1 turns out in Black's favour - for example, 9 e4 d6 10 ed 0-0 11 h3 cd 12 ♖d4 ♖a5+ 13 ♗c3 ♗e5 14 b3 ♗c6 15 ♖d5 ♖b6 with a clear advantage. If instead 7 ♖e4, Taimanov recommends 7 ... d5! 8 ed+ (8 cd is weak in view of 8 ... g6! 9 ♕b5+ ♖f8) 8 ... ♖f8 9 ♗c3 g6, and again Black has a clear plus. We should point out, however, that White can improve with 9 ♖e7+ ♖xe7 10 de+ ♖xe7 11 ♗a3, remaining with an extra pawn. Therefore in place of 8 ... ♖f8, Black does better with 8 ... ♕e6, with distinct compensation for the sacrificed material.

d) 6 ♗c3, and now:

d1) If Black plays 6 ... ♗cxe5?, there follows 7 h3! ♗xf3+ 8 ♖xf3 ♗e5 9 ♖g3, with advantage. For ex-

ample, Nikolic - Barbero, World Junior Ch. 1979, continued 9 ... ♗g6 10 ♖d2 ♖d6 11 f4 ♖e7 12 0-0-0 ♖f6 13 ♗f3 d6 14 ♗d5 0-0 15 ♖d3 ♖d7 16 h4, with a winning attack against the king. In Hort - Novoselski, Böblingen 1986, White played even more convincingly: 10 h4! ♖d6 11 f4 ♖e7 12 ♗d5 0-0 13 ♖d2! (a highly promising exchange sacrifice) 13 ... ♖xh4 14 ♖xh4 ♗xh4 (if 14 ... ♗xh4 15 ♗xh4 ♗xh4, Hort gives 16 ♗xc7 ♖b8 17 ♖b4 d6 18 ♗b5 ♖e8 19 ♖xd6 ♖a8 20 ♗c7 ♖xe3+ 21 ♗f2 ♖e6 22 c5, with a won position for White) 15 ♖c3 ♗g6 (15 ... ♗f5 16 ♗g4 d6 17 ♖d3 doesn't help either) 16 f5, and White quickly won.

d2) The simplest answer is 6 ... ♗gxe5, so as to meet 7 ♗d4 (7 ♖e2 would lead to variation A) with 7 ... 0-0 8 ♗b3 ♖b4 9 ♖d2 ♖e8 10 ♗d5 ♖xd2+ 11 ♗xd2 d6, equalising.

d3) 6 ... 0-0 is also playable. If White continues with 7 ♖d3 (for 7 ♖e2, see variation A; for 7 ♗d5 ♗e7 8 a3 a5, see B1, note 'b' to Black's 7th move), then 7 ... ♖e8! 8 0-0 ♗gxe5 9 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 10 ♖c2 d6! (but not 10 ... ♗h4? 11 ♗d5 ♖e6 12 g3!) gives a roughly equal game; if instead 7 a3, Black

achieves a comfortable set-up with 7 ... ♖e8! 8 b4 ♖f8 9 ♖b2 a5 10 b5 ♗cxe5 11 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 12 ♖e2 d6, followed by ... ♗d7-c5 with the better prospects (authors' analysis).

e) 6 b3 gives these possibilities:

e1) Henkin - Gurin, Naberezhnie Chelny 1988, went 6 ... 0-0 7 ♖b2 ♖e8 8 ♖d3 (8 ♖e2 is more cautious), and now Black should have decided on 8 ... d6, aiming to meet 9 ed with a piece sacrifice: 9 ... ♗xf2! 10 ♗xf2 ♖xe3, and Black develops a dangerous initiative. Instead he played 8 ... ♗gxe5?! 9 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 10 ♖xh7+ ♗xh7 11 ♗h5+ ♗g8 12 ♖xe5 ♗e7 13 ♖b2 ♖xe3, and now White could have gained the advantage with 14 0-0! ♖b6 (or 14 ... ♖f4 15 ♗c3) 15 ♗d2 d6 (15 ... ♗e2 is answered by 16 ♗g5) 16 ♗f3.

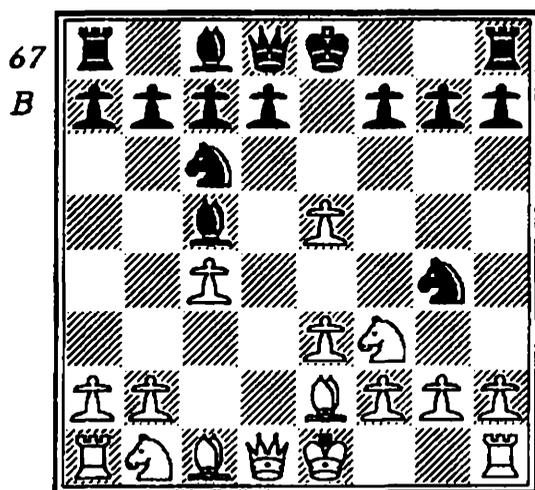
e2) Kondeyevsky - Hodakov, Kerch 1930, continued 6 ... ♗gxe5 7 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 8 ♖b2 ♗f6! 9 ♗c2 (evidently 9 ♗c3 was better, but Black could reply 9 ... ♖b4 10 ♖c1 ♗g6 with a good game) 9 ... d6! 10 f4 (this time 10 ♗c3 is met by 10 ... ♖f5 11 e4 ♖e6, with the better chances for Black) 10 ... ♗h4+ 11 g3 ♗f3+, and after 12 ♗e2 ♗h5 13 ♗e4+ ♗e5+ 14 ♗d2 ♖f5! 15 ♗xb7 ♗f3+ 16

♖c3 0-0 17 ♖e2 ♖b4+ (17 ... ♗g6! is simpler) 18 ♗xb4 (or 18 ♖xb4 ♖ab8) 18 ... ♗g6!, Black won. White could have improved with 12 ♖f2 (instead of 12 ♖e2), but even so, Black obtains the better prospects with 12 ... ♗e7 13 ♗c3 (if 13 ♖xf3, then 13 ... ♗xe3+ 14 ♖g2 ♖g4!) 13 ... ♖h4 14 ♖d2 (Black has a clear plus after either 14 gh ♗xh4+ 15 ♖g1 ♗xf4 16 ♖c1 0-0, or 15 ♖e2 ♖g4+ 16 ♖d3 0-0-0) 14 ... ♖f5.

e3) 6 ... ♖b4+ also deserves consideration.

So we see that if White deviates from the main lines, Black has simpler methods of achieving an equal game.

A
6 ♖e2 (67)



6 ... ♖gxe5

6 ... 0-0 7 ♖c3 ♖e8 is also playable. In Banas - Kouatly, Trnava 1986, there followed 8 b3 ♖gxe5 9

♖xe5 ♖xe5 10 ♖b2; now Black should have continued 10 ... a5!, and if 11 ♗c2, then 11 ... ♖a6 12 0-0-0 ♖g6, with equal chances.

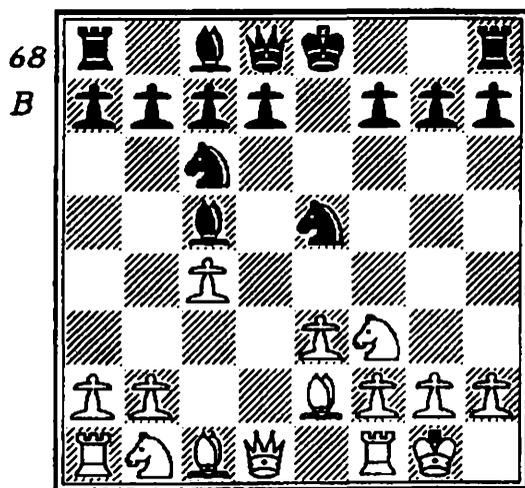
In Panno - Drimer, Havana 1969, Black played 7 ... ♖cxe5 instead of 7 ... ♖e8, and the game went 8 0-0 ♖e8 (8 ... ♖xf3+ 9 ♖xf3 ♖e5 10 ♖e2 leads to variation A22) 9 ♖d4 ♖f6 10 ♖b3; now with 10 ... b6! Black could have obtained a satisfactory position.

After the text move (6 ... ♖gxe5), White has to decide whether or not to exchange knights immediately. We consider:

- A1 7 0-0
- A2 7 ♖xe5

Or 7 ♖c3 ♖xf3+ 8 ♖xf3 0-0 9 0-0, which transposes to A1 (note 'c' to Black's 8th move).

A1
7 0-0 (68)



7 ... 0-0

For 7 ... ♖xf3+ 8 ♕xf3 ♖e5 9 ♖c3 0-0, see the main variation, note 'c' to Black's 8th move.

7 ... d6 is worth considering. White may continue 8 b3 0-0 9 ♖c3 a6 10 ♕b2. In Sigurjonsson - Segal, Ybbs 1969, Black replied 10 ... ♖xf3+?, and after 11 ♕xf3 ♖e5 12 ♖e4 ♕a7 13 ♖d5! ♖e8 14 ♖fd1 ♖e7? (better 14 ... ♖h4) 15 c5! White obtained a clear plus. Instead of 10 ... ♖xf3+ Black should have played 10 ... ♕f5. If then 11 ♖d4 (White gains nothing from 11 ♖a4 ♕a7 12 ♖d4 ♕d7, or 12 ♖xe5 de) 11 ... ♕d7 12 ♖e4 (12 ♖a4 ♕a7) 12 ... ♕b6, the game transposes into Oleska - Ivancho, USSR 1959, in which White played the unsound 13 f4?, permitting Black to start a dangerous counter-attack: 13 ... ♖h4! 14 g3 ♖h6 15 ♕c1 ♖g4 16 ♕xg4 ♕xg4 17 ♖xg4 ♖xd4 18 ♖d1 ♖fe8 19 ♖d3 ♖e2+, with a winning position.

8 ♖c3 ♖e8

Black also has some other possibilities:

a) 8 ... d6 is considered inadequate on account of 9 ♖a4. In Foltys - Bakonyi, Budapest 1948, the continuation was 9 ... ♕b6 10 b3 ♕f5? 11 ♕b2 ♖e8 12 ♖xb6 ab 13 ♖d4 ♕d7 14 ♖d2 ♖h4 15

a4, with advantage to White. However, after 10 ... ♖e7! (instead of 10 ... ♕f5) 11 ♕b2 ♕d7 12 ♖xb6 ab, Black would achieve a perfectly acceptable position (authors' analysis).

b) 8 ... a5 9 b3, and now:

b1) A game Sämisch - Reinhardt, Germany 1932, went 9 ... d6 10 ♕b2 f5 (if 10 ... ♖xf3+ 11 ♕xf3 ♖e5, then 12 ♖e4! on the lines of Sigurjonsson - Segal which we have looked at already) 11 g3 ♕d7 12 ♖d2 ♖e8 13 ♖d5 ♖c8 14 ♕c3 with advantage to White.

b2) The concealed point of 8 ... a5 lies in the possibility of bringing the black queen's rook over to the kingside. For this reason, 9 ... ♖xf3+ 10 ♕xf3 ♖e5 looks good. A game Stigter - van Haastert, Holland 1980, continued 11 ♕b2 (better 11 ♕e2, leading to variation A22) 11 ... ♖xf3+ 12 ♖xf3 ♖a6 13 e4 ♖h6 14 e5 d6 15 ♖a4 ♕a7 16 ♖ad1 ♖h4 17 ♖g3 ♖h5 18 ed ♖g6 19 ♖d5 f5 20 ♖c3 ♖g4 21 ♖g3 ♖e4, with a won position for Black.

b3) 9 ... ♖e8 is likely to transpose to the main line.

c) 8 ... ♖xf3+ 9 ♕xf3 ♖e5, and now 10 ♕e2 leads to a position we shall examine later (see A22). Lputian - Malanyuk, Moscow 1987,

saw instead 10 b3 ♖xf3+ (10 ... a5, as in Stigter - van Haastert, is also good) 11 ♖xf3 ♖e8 12 ♖b2 ♖e6 13 ♖ad1 ♖f8 (Black's pawn formation is strictly *à la* Steinitz!) 14 ♖d5? (a dubious undertaking) 14 ... d6 15 ♖f5 ♖g6! (throwing cold water on White's plan! 16 ♖xf7 would lose the exchange, so the rook is forced to retrace its steps) 16 ♖f4 c6 17 ♖d1 ♖e6 18 ♖fd4 ♖a5 18 h3 a6 20 ♖4d2, and now instead of 20 ... ♖f6 21 ♖e2 ♖g6 22 ♖f3 ♖f6 23 ♖e2 resulting in a draw, Black had every reason to play for a win with 20 ... ♖g5!

9 b3

In Linn - Angelova, Dubai Olympiad 1986, White played 9 a3 a5 10 ♖d4 d6 11 ♖d5, to which Black should have replied 11 ... ♖e7! with a satisfactory game.

9 ... ♖xf3+

9 ... ♖f8 10 ♖b2 d6 is unsatisfactory here. In a game Barcza - Bakonyi, Hungary 1951, the continuation was 11 ♖d2 ♖f5 (if 11 ... ♖xf3+ 12 ♖xf3 ♖e5, then 13 ♖e4!) 12 ♖d4 ♖xd4 13 ed ♖g6 14 d5, with the better game for White.

However, in addition to the text move, it is worth considering 9 ... a5 (or even 9 ... ♖e6!?). Nimzowitsch -

Helling, Berlin 1928, continued 10 ♖a4 ♖e7 11 ♖b2 ♖f6 12 c5! with advantage, but Black could have improved by playing 10 ... ♖f8! 11 ♖b2 d6, with an acceptable position. In Torre - Condie, Dubai Olympiad 1986, White preferred 10 ♖d4 (10 ♖b2 can be met by 10 ... ♖a6!?). There followed 10 ... b6 11 ♖b2 ♖b7 12 ♖d5 ♖e7 13 ♖f3 ♖xd5 14 ♖xe5 ♖f6 15 ♖f3 ♖xf3 16 ♖xf3, and after 16 ... ♖d6! 17 ♖d3 ♖e4 18 ♖g4 ♖g5 the chances were equal.

10 ♖xf3 ♖e5

11 ♖b2

For 11 ♖e2, see variation A22.

11 ... a5

11 ... ♖xf3+ 12 ♖xf3 ♖e6 is playable, leading to a position from Lputian - Malanyuk which we have examined above (note 'c' to Black's 8th move).

Another perfectly safe line for Black is 11 ... d6 12 ♖a4 (12 ♖e2 leads to positions in variation A21) 12 ... ♖xf3+ 13 ♖xf3 ♖b6 (the position has been simplified and White can undertake nothing to speak of) 14 ♖fd1 ♖e7 15 ♖d5 ♖d7 16 ♖xb6 ab 17 ♖f4 f6, with equal chances; Buckley - Agnos, Oakham 1988.

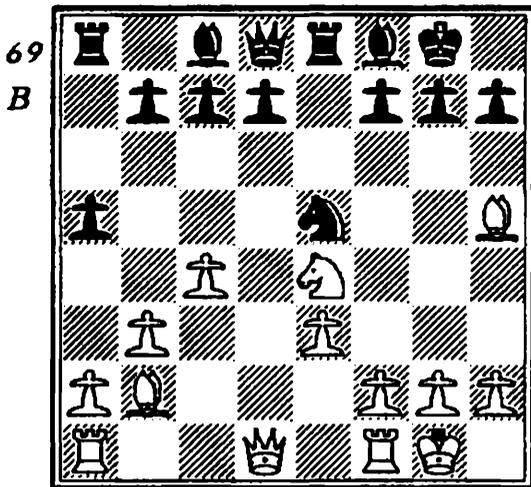
12 ♖e4!?

12 ♖e2 is variation A22.

12 ... ♔f8

13 ♔h5 (69)

13 ♖g3 ♖a6 14 ♔e2 (if 14 ♔e4, then 14 ... ♖h4!) leads by transposition to the game Li Zunian - Haik, Dubai Olympiad 1986, which continued 14 ... ♖h6 15 ♖f5 ♖g6 16 f4 (better 16 e4, which would probably be met by 16 ... ♖c6 17 ♔f3 d6) 16 ... ♖c6 17 ♔h5 ♖ge6 18 ♖f3 g6 19 ♖g3 ♖f6!, and after 20 ♔xf6 ♖xf6 21 ♖d4 ♖xd4 22 ed ♔g7 Black acquired a material advantage sufficient for victory.



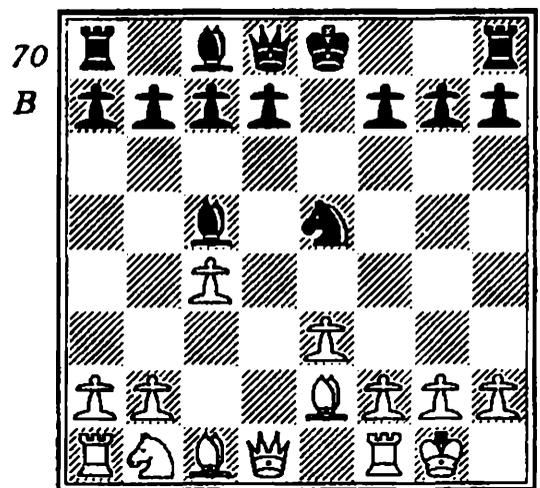
In this position Black has every reason to strive for an advantage. For example, Christiansen - Tolnai, St John 1988, continued 13 ... ♖a6 14 f4 ♖g6 15 ♖g5 d5! 16 cd ♔c5 17 ♖xf7 ♖xf7 18 f5 ♖g8 19 fg hg 20 ♔g4 ♔xg4 21 ♖xg4 ♔xe3+ 22 ♖h1 ♖xd5 23 ♖ad1 ♖e6, and Black kept his extra pawn.

Another continuation that deserves attention is 13 ... ♖g6 14 ♔xg6 hg 15

♖f3. In Christiansen - Rogers, Wellington 1988, Black now played the inaccurate 15 ... ♖h4?!, which was met by 16 ♖c3 d6 17 h3 c6 18 ♖ad1 g5 19 ♖d4 ♖h7 20 ♖fd1, with the better chances for White. But Black could have contended for the advantage with 15 ... a4 16 ♖ad1 (or 16 ♔c3 ♖e7 17 ♖d2 ♖a3) 16 ... ab 17 ab ♖e7 (17 ... ♖a5 also looks good) 18 ♖c3 c6!, or 15 ... ♖a6 16 ♖ad1 ♖ae6 (16 ... a4!? is also playable) 17 ♖c3 ♖f6 18 ♖g3 ♔d6 19 f4 g5 20 ♖d5 ♖g6.

A2

7 ♖xe5 ♖xe5
8 0-0 (70)



In this position we shall look in detail at two possibilities for Black.

A21 8 ... d6

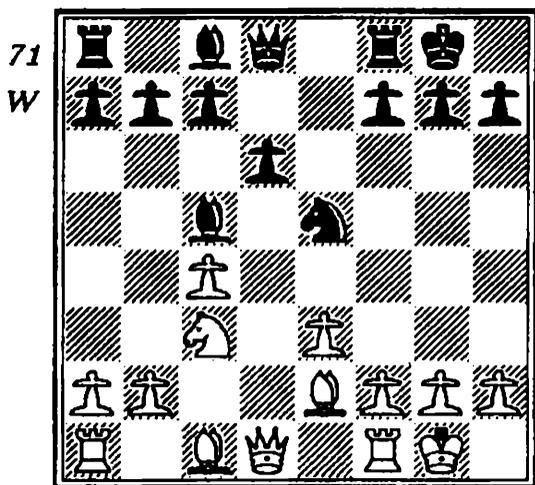
A22 8 ... 0-0

A dubious alternative is 8 ... ♖h4: Uhlmann - Trajkovic, Dresden 1956, con-

tinued 9 ♖c3 h5 10 ♖d5 ♖d8
11 b4 ♖d6 12 f4 ♖g4 13 h3 c6
14 c5! with advantage to
White.

A21

8 ... d6
9 ♖c3 0-0 (71)



10 b3

White achieves nothing with 10 ♖h1 ♖e8 11 ♖a4. In Vaiser - Epishin, Sevastopol 1986, there followed 11 ... ♗h4! 12 ♖xc5 dc 13 f3 (if 13 ♗d5, then 13 ... ♖e6) 13 ... ♖f5 14 ♗e1 ♗e7 15 ♗c3 ♖ad8 16 e4 ♖c6 17 ♖f4 ♖g6 18 ♖d3 ♖d4 19 ♖ae1 ♖d7 20 ♖b1 ♗f6 21 ♖c1 ♗c6 22 a3 f6 23 ♖e3 b6 24 ♖f2 a5 25 ♖d1 ♖ed8, and Black's position deserves preference.

In the event of 10 ♖a4 ♖b6 (10 ... ♗e7 11 b3 ♖f5! 12 ♖b2 ♖ad8 is also playable) 11 b3, Black does best to reply 11 ... ♗h4! 12 ♖xb6 ab 13 ♖b2 ♖e8, with a fully satisfactory position. For example: 14 ♗d4 ♗xd4 15 ♖xd4 ♖g4 16 ♖xg4 (if 16 f3,

then 16 ... ♖c6! is good) 16 ... ♖xg4, with complete equality, as in Karolyi - Rogers, Tallinn 1985; or 14 ♗d2 ♖g4 15 ♖xg4 ♗xg4 16 ♖c3 ♖d7 17 a4 ♖c6, and a draw was agreed in Aleksandria - Levitina, Dubna 1983.

10 ... a5

Miles - Lombardy, Buenos Aires 1979, saw instead 10 ... a6 11 ♖b2 ♖a7!, and after 12 ♗d2 ♖e8 13 ♖d5 c6 14 ♖f4 ♖g4 15 ♖ad1 ♖xe2 16 ♗xe2 ♗h4 17 ♗h5 ♗xh5 18 ♖xh5 ♖ad8 19 a4 f6 20 ♖g3 ♖f7, Black maintained the balance.

10 ... ♖e8 is also playable; then 11 ♖a4 b6 12 ♖b2 (for 12 a3 a5, compare with variation B) 12 ... a5, or 11 ♖b2 a5, transposes into lines given below. However, after 11 ♖b2, it is also worth considering 11 ... ♖e6 (11 ... ♖d7 is also acceptable) 12 g3 ♗d7 13 ♗d5 ♖h6. In Gheorghiu - Terreaux, Mendrisio 1985, there followed 14 ♖fd1, and after 14 ... ♖g4? 15 ♖e4 ♖xe3 16 ♖xc5 ♗h3 17 ♗h1 White repulsed the attack, remaining with a material plus. But Black could have played the stronger 14 ... ♗h3! 15 ♗g2 ♗xg2+ 16 ♖xg2 ♖h3+ 17 ♖g1 ♖e8! 18 ♖a4 ♖g4 19 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 20 ♖xc5 dc 21 h4 g5 22 hg ♖h2, with

equal chances (authors' analysis).

11 ♖b2 ♖e8

Practice has also seen the following:

a) 11 ... ♖f5 12 ♘a4 ♖a7? (12 ... ♖e8! is correct) 13 c5 ♖h4 14 cd cd 15 ♖d4 ♖xd4 16 ♖xd4, with advantage to White: Bondarevsky - Hin-kov, Bulgaria 1949.

b) 11 ... ♖d7 12 ♖d2 ♖c6 (again, 12 ... ♖e8 is better) 13 ♘d5 ♖d7 14 a3, and White has the better prospects; Primavera - Heidenfeld, Venice 1953.

c) 11 ... ♖h4 12 ♘b5 ♖e7 13 ♖d4 ♖f5 14 ♘c3 ♖h4? 15 ♖xc5 dc 16 ♖d5, with a clear plus; Kolarov - Kwiatkowski, Bulgaria, 1955.

We would add that 11 ... ♖a7 is well answered by 12 ♘b5, but 11 ... f6!? deserves attention.

12 ♖h1 (72)

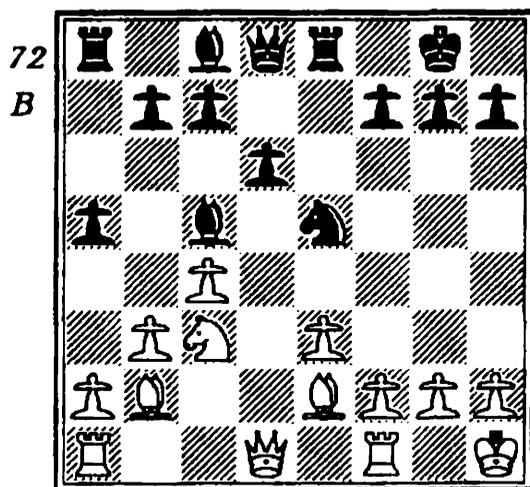
At this point, in answer to 12 ♘a4 (12 a3 transposes to variation B2), Black has no need to retreat with his bishop, since he has 12 ... b6! at his disposal. There can follow 13 ♘xc5 bc 14 f4 ♘d7 15 ♖f3 ♖b8 (15 ... ♖a7!? is also worth considering). Practice has shown that Black's chances are now preferable, for example:

a) Osnos - Ermolinsky, Leningrad 1977, went 16 ♖d2 a4 17 ba ♘b6 18 ♖ac1 ♖a6 19

♖e2 ♖e4 20 ♖f3 ♘xc4, with a clear plus. The further course of the game was 21 ♖xc4 ♖xc4 22 ♖g3 f6 23 h3 ♖f7 24 a5 c4 25 ♖c2 d5 26 ♖c3 c5! 27 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 28 ♖xf6 g6 29 ♖d1 ♖a8 30 ♖c3 ♖d8 31 a6 ♖a8, and Black soon won.

b) In Agadzhanian - Nandanian, Erevan 1989, White preferred 16 ♖d3 a4 17 ♖fe1. Black now played the unfortunate 17 ... f6?, allowing White to gain the advantage with 18 ♖d5+ ♖h8 19 e4 ♖e7 20 ♖e3. However, with 17 ... ab 18 ab ♖b7 Black would have retained good prospects.

After the text move (12 ♖h1), White threatens to gain space with the pawn advances f2 - f4 and e3 - e4.



Play may continue:

a) 12 ... ♖f5 13 e4 ♖d7 14 f4 ♘c6 15 ♖d3 ♖d4, and now White could have consolidated his advantage with 16 ♖d2; Lengyel -

Drimer, Luhacovice 1969. In addition to 13 e4, a good idea seems to be 13 ♖b5 (or 13 a3!?) 13 ... c6 14 ♖d4 ♖d7 15 a3, followed by ♗d2 and b2 - b4.

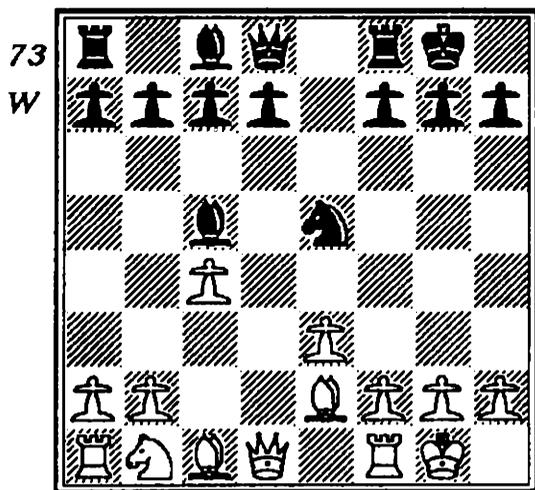
b) 12 ... ♗h4 is also weak on account of 13 g3 ♗h3 14 ♖d5.

c) 12 ... ♖g6! looks like the best continuation. In Acevedo - Tagnon, Lucerne Olympiad 1982, there followed 13 ♗d2 ♖d7 14 ♖f3 c6 15 ♖e4 ♖f5 16 ♖xc5 dc 17 ♗xd8 ♖axd8 18 ♖fd1 ♖c2 19 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 20 ♖c1 ♖f5 21 g4 ♖h4! 22 ♖d1 ♖xd1+ 23 ♖xd1 ♖e4+, with equality.

A22

8 ... 0-0 (73)

This move has independent significance if it is combined with the aggressive plan of bringing the queen's rook across to the kingside via a6.



9 ♖c3

Taborov - Malevinsky,
Kostroma 1985, went 9 b3

♖e8 10 ♖b2 a5 11 ♖d4; now Black's simplest continuation is 11 ... ♖f8 followed by ... ♖a6.

On 9 ♖d2, Black can play 9 ... d5 10 cd ♗xd5 11 ♖c3 ♗e6; or 9 ... d6 10 b4 ♖b6 11 ♖c3 ♗e7; or finally 9 ... a5 10 ♖c3 ♖e8 (10 ... ♗e7 transposes to note 'b' after diagram 66) 11 ♖d4 ♖f8, with ... ♖a6 to follow. In all cases Black has a satisfactory game.

9 ... a5

Black can also play the immediate 9 ... ♖e8, which transposes into the main variation after 10 b3 a5. If instead White plays 10 a3, then 10 ... a5 leads to variation B1. For 10 ♖h1, see *Illustrative Game No. 12* (Spassky - Illescas).

10 b3 ♖e8

11 ♖b2

11 a3 leads to variation B2.

After the insertion of 11 ♖e4 ♖f8, White has:

a) 12 ♖b2 ♗h4 (for 12 ... ♖a6, see the note to Black's 12th move in the main line) 13 ♖g3 d6 14 ♗c2 ♖g4 15 ♖xg4 ♗xg4 16 f3 ♗g6 17 e4 h5, with sharp play and chances for both sides; Ftacnik - Grimaldi, Thessaloniki Olympiad 1988.

b) 12 f4 was played in Salov - Illescas, Barcelona 1989. There followed 12 ...

♖g4 13 ♗xg4 ♘xe4 14 ♙d3 (a double-edged position results from 14 ♗f3 ♘e8 15 e4 ♗c5+ 16 ♖h1 ♙f6 17 ♘b1 ♘a6 18 ♗b2 ♙g6) 14 ... ♘e8 15 ♗b2 ♙e7 16 ♘f3 d5 17 ♗xc8 dc 18 ♙xc4 ♘axc8, with equal chances. We would point out that 12 ... ♖g6 is also playable (in place of 12 ... ♖g4). For example, 13 ♖g3 ♙f6 14 ♘b1 ♗c5 15 f5 ♖h4; or 13 ♖c3 ♗c5 14 ♘f3 ♖h4; or finally 13 ♗f3 ♘a6 14 ♙d3 d5 - with adequate counterchances for Black in all cases (authors' analysis).

11 ... ♘a6
12 ♖e4

Let us examine the alternatives:

a) In Smyslov - Drimer, Hastings 1969/70, Black answered 12 ♖a4 with 12 ... ♗f8 (12 ... ♗a7 13 c5 ♘h6! 14 f4 ♖c6 15 ♗f3 b5 was also playable) 13 f4 ♖c6 14 c5 ♘a8 15 ♘f3 d6, leading to sharp play and approximate equality.

(Ed: In Lukacs - Conquest, Budapest 1987, White improved with 14 ♙d2!, which gave him a clear advantage. Black should therefore play 13 ... ♘d6! 14 ♙c2 ♖c6 with an unclear position.)

b) 12 ♙d5 also occurred in Akesson - Tagnon, Berlin 1984. There followed 12 ...

♙e7 13 ♖e4 ♗a7 14 c5 ♘g6 15 ♘ac1 (if 15 f4, then 15 ... ♖g4!), to which Black should have replied 15 ... ♖c6! with dangerous threats. At move 12, another good line seems to be 12 ... ♗a7 13 c5 (13 ♖e4 leads to the main line, while 13 ♖b5 c6! clearly favours Black - M Kuijf) 13 ... ♘h6 14 f4, and now not 14 ... ♙h4? 15 h3 which is clearly good for White (D Paunovic), but 14 ... ♖c6 15 ♗c4 ♙e7 16 ♖e4 (16 ♖a4 is worse on account of 16 ... ♖b4) 16 ... ♖d8, with counterplay (authors' analysis).

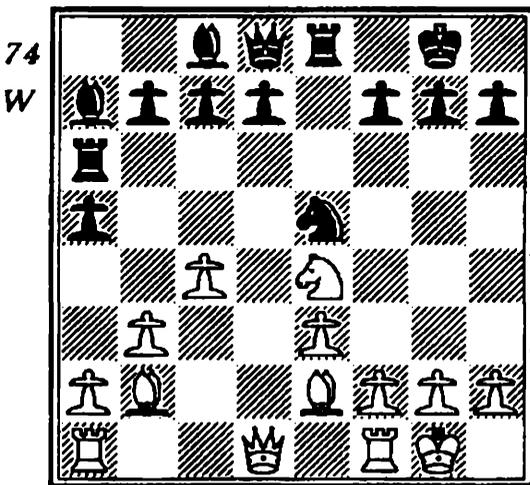
(Ed: After 12 ♙d5 ♗a7 Skembris - Legky, Vrnjacka Banja 1989, finished 13 ♘ad1 ♘g6 14 ♖h1 c6 15 ♙d2 ♙h4 16 f4 ♙h4 17 h3 ♙g3 18 ♙e1 ♘xh3+ 19 gh ♙xh3+ 20 ♖g1 ♘e6 21 ♗h5 ♙xh5 22 fe ♘g6+ 23 ♖f2 ♙h2+ 24 ♖f3 ♙g2+ 0-1.)

c) 12 ♖d5 was played in Zilberman - Miezis, Katowice 1990. The game continued 12 ... ♘h6 13 g3 d6 14 ♖f4 ♙d7 (14 ... g5!? was worth considering) 15 h4 ♖g6 16 ♖g2 ♙h3 17 ♗f3, and after 17 ... ♗d7? 18 ♗d4 a draw was agreed. Yet Black had a combination available: 17 ... ♖xh4! 18 ♖xh4 ♘xe3! 19 ♘e1 ♘xe1+ 20 ♙xe1 ♗e6, and White is at a loss for an adequate defence.

For example, 21 ♖g2 ♗xg3 22 ♗f5 ♖xf2+ 23 ♗xf2 ♖h1+ 24 ♗xh1 ♗xf2, and Black wins.

12 ... ♖a7 (74)

The alternative retreat 12 ... ♖f8 is also playable. Antoshin - Drimer, Havana 1968, continued 13 f4 ♗g4! 14 ♗d3 ♗e7 15 ♖xg4 ♗xe4, with equal chances. Instead 13 ♗g3 ♖h6 transposes into Li Zunian - Haik, which we examined in the notes to White's 12th move in variation A1.



13 ♗d5

In choosing this continuation, White takes it upon himself to withstand Black's powerful attack.

A game Petelin - Kramnik, Ivano-Frankovsk 1988, went 13 ♗g3 ♖h6 14 ♖d4 c5!? 15 ♖c3 (15 ♖xe5 was worth considering) 15 ... ♗h4 16 h3 d6 17 ♖e1 ♖g6 18 ♖f1 f5, with chances for both sides. In our view, at move 17, a more effective choice was 17 ... g5! with

good prospects.

Romero gives the variation 13 ♖d4 ♖xd4 14 ed ♗g6! 15 ♗g3 ♗f4 16 ♖f3 d5, leading to equality. Instead of 13 ... ♖xd4, it would be interesting to try 13 ... ♗h4!?

13 ... ♖ae6

The usual continuation: Black offers a promising pawn sacrifice. But other lines also deserve attention. For example, 13 ... ♗e7 transposes into Akesson - Tagnon, considered in note 'b' to White's 12th move.

In addition, 13 ... ♖h6 looks good, and now:

a) If 14 ♖xe5, then after 14 ... c6 15 ♖f6 gf 16 ♗d3 f5 17 ♗d6 ♖b8 18 c5 ♗h4 19 h3 ♖g6, Black obtains a clear plus.

b) A game D. Ilić - Legky, Novi Bečej 1989, went 14 g3 c6 15 ♗d1 d5 (at this point, in our opinion, Black could have won a pawn at no particular danger to himself, by 15 ... ♗xc4) 16 cd cd 17 ♗c3 d4 18 ♗b5 ♗d7 19 h4 ♗h3 20 ♗xa7 ♖g4 with a dangerous attack.

14 ♗xa5

After 14 ♗c5 ♖d6 15 ♗xb7 ♖xd5 16 ♗xd8 ♖d2 17 ♖xe5 ♖xe5, the straying knight is not to be saved. A possible continuation is 18 ♖f3 c6 19 ♖fd1 (if 19 ♖xc6, then 19 ... ♖e8) 19 ... ♖xd1+

20 ♖xd1 ♖e8 21 ♖xc6 dc 22 ♖xc6 ♖f8, and White's three pawns are not worth the piece.

In Gurevich - Korchnoi, Madrid (rapid) 1988, White tried the interesting 14 c5!?, to which Black replied 14 ... c6 15 ♖d2 d5 16 cd ♖h4. In the position that arose after 17 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 18 d7 ♖xd7 19 ♖xd7 ♖5e7 20 ♖d2 ♖xe4 21 ♖xa5, Black's activity compensated for the pawn minus.

For 14 ♖g3, see *Illustrative Game No. 13* (Odessky - Kramnik).

14 ... ♖b6
15 ♖c3

In a game Polovodin - Panchenko, USSR 1987, White played 15 ♖b4. There followed 15 ... d6 16 c5 dc 17 ♖xc5 ♖g6 18 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 19 ♖d3 c5!? 20 ♖c3 ♖eg5 21 g3 ♖a5 22 ♖b2?! ♖d6 23 ♖f4 ♖d2 24 ♖c1 ♖f5 25 ♖g4 g5 26 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 27 ♖xc5! ♖g4, and Black acquired a considerable initiative.

In place of 15 ... d6, Black had two perfectly playable alternatives: 15 ... ♖h4 16 c5 ♖a7 (after 16 ... ♖xc5, Black has at least equal chances) 17 g3 ♖e7 18 ♖ac1 b6, with unclear complications; and 15 ... ♖c6 16 ♖c3 ♖d4! 17 ed ♖xe4 18 ♖d3 ♖xd4 19 ♖c2 ♖xb2 20 ♖xb2 ♖4e5, when Black's chances are slightly

better (authors' analysis).

15 ... ♖h4
16 f4

The only move that enables White to organise resistance. The following examples demonstrate the force of Black's attack:

a) 16 c5 ♖h6 17 h3 d5! 18 cb ♖xh3! and Black wins.

b) 16 ♖d2 ♖h6 17 h3 d6 18 ♖f3 ♖xf3+ 19 ♖xf3 ♖g6 20 ♖h2 ♖xh3! 21 gh ♖xe3!! with an easy win.

c) 16 ♖g3 ♖h6 17 ♖h5 d6 18 b4 ♖g4 19 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 20 ♖g3 ♖h4! 21 h3 ♖xc4 22 ♖xc4 ♖xc4 23 ♖c3 ♖xe3 24 ♖fel ♖he6, and Black has a material advantage with the better position.

16 ... ♖h6
17 h3

At this point Romero also gives the following: 17 fe ♖xh2+ 18 ♖f2 ♖h4+ 19 ♖g3 ♖g6, with decisive threats; or 17 c5 d5! 18 cb de 19 fe ♖xh2+ 20 ♖f2 ♖g6 21 ♖g1 ♖g3+ 22 ♖f1 ♖g5, and White has no satisfactory defence.

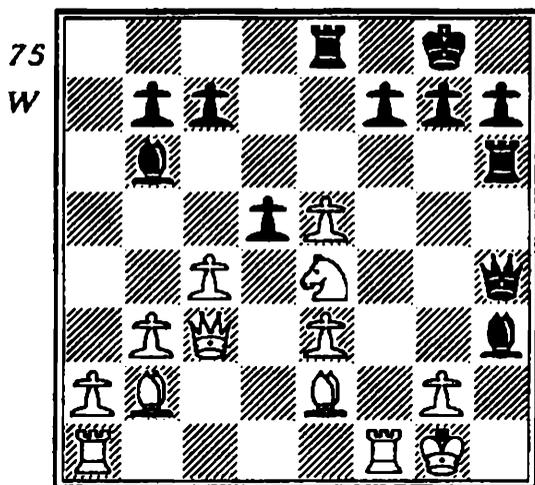
17 ... d5
18 fe

18 ♖g5 is met by 18 ... ♖g3! 19 c5 ♖xh3 20 ♖xh3 ♖xh3 21 fe ♖h2, followed by ... ♖h4 with unavoidable mate.

On 18 cd, Black continues 18 ... ♖xh3!, and if 19 g3, then 19 ... ♖g6 20 ♖f2 ♖xg3!

21 ♗xg3 ♜xf4+ is decisive. In Oll - Romero, Groningen 1984/5, White tried 19 gh instead. There followed 19 ... ♜xh3 20 ♖f2 ♜h4+ 21 ♗g3 ♜h2+ (21 ... ♖g6! 22 ♖g1 ♜xf4+ 23 ♖e1 ♙xe3 was simpler) 22 ♖e1 ♜xg3+ 23 ♖d1 ♗d7, with a won position.

18 ... ♙xh3 (75)



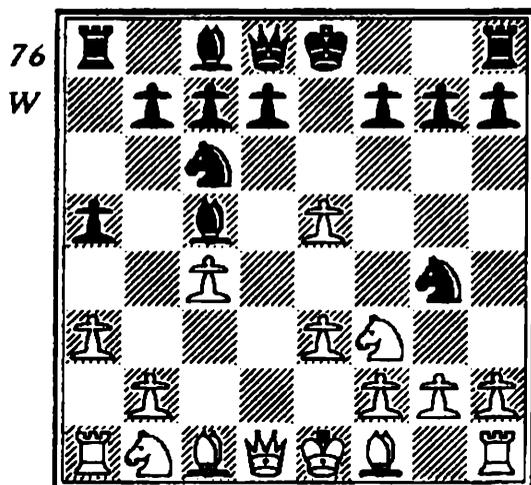
Now if 19 gh, Black has 19 ... ♜xe4 20 ♖h2 (or 20 c5 ♖xh3) 20 ... d4, or 20 ... ♙xe3, winning easily.

Nevertheless, in a game Vainerman - Legky, USSR 1986, White did find a way to save himself: 19 e6! f6 20 ♖xf6! (but not 20 ♗xf6+? gf 21 ♖xf6, on account of 21 ... d4! 22 ♖xh6 ♜g5, winning the queen) 20 ... gf 21 ♗xf6+ ♖xf6 22 ♜xf6 ♙xe3+ 23 ♖h1 ♜xf6 24 ♙xf6 ♙xe6 25 cd ♙xd5, with equal chances.

B

6 a3 a5 (76)

The insertion of these



moves means that White must play cautiously to avoid coming under attack. The point is that 6 ... a5 fits into the plan of attacking White's kingside (!), whereas 6 a3 does little in the way of defending it.

From the diagram, White's usual continuations are:

B1 7 ♗c3

B2 7 b3

In Inkirov - Antonov, Pernik 1981, White played 7 ♙d2 ♗gxe5 8 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 9 ♙c3 d6 10 ♗d2, to which Black should have replied 10 ... ♜e7 11 ♗b3 ♙b6 with equality. But a move earlier, it was worth considering 9 ... ♜e7! 10 ♗d2 ♖a6, threatening a kingside attack (authors' analysis).

The game Unenian - Nandanian, Erevan 1989, went 7 ♜d5 ♜e7 8 ♙d2 (8 ♗c3 ♗gxe5 9 ♗a4 is answered by 9 ... d6!) 8 ... 0-0 9 ♙c3

♞e8 10 ♗bd2?! (now if 10 ♖e2, Black's chances are preferable after 10 ... ♗gxe5 11 0-0 d6; but that would still have been better than the move played) 10 ... d6! 11 ed (11 ♖e2 de!) 11 ... cd 12 ♗d3 (12 ♖d3 is met by 12 ... ♗xf2!, while if 12 ♗g5, then 12 ... f6 13 ♗d5+ ♖h8) 12 ... ♖xe3! 13 fe ♗xe3 14 ♖f2 (neither 14 ♖e2 ♖f5, nor 14 ♗e2 ♗d8!, is any help) 14 ... ♖f5 15 ♗e2 ♗g4+ 16 ♖g1 (Black has the same reply to 16 ♖e1) 16 ... ♗c7! and White resigned. Beautiful!

B1

7 ♗c3 ♗gxe5

Instead:

a) 7 ... ♗cxe5 is dubious on account of 8 h3 ♗xf3+ 9 ♗xf3 ♗f6 10 b3. In van Scheltinga - Drimer, Wijk aan Zee 1970, there followed 10 ... d6? (better 10 ... ♖e7 11 ♖b2 ♞b8) 11 ♖b2 ♖d7 12 ♗e4, with advantage to White.

b) 7 ... 0-0 8 ♗d5 ♗e7 9 ♗b5 is sometimes played, whereupon 9 ... ♖b6 10 c5 ♖xc5 11 ♗xc7 ♞b8 12 ♗e4 ♗gxe5 13 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 allows White to gain the advantage with 14 ♖e2 b5 15 f4. In Goldin - M. Ivanov, Leningrad 1989, Black played the more accurate 9 ... d6! 10 ed cd 11 ♗c3 (after 11

♖e2 ♖e6 12 ♗d1 ♗ge5, the chances are equal) 11 ... ♖e6 12 ♗d1 ♗ce5, and now 13 ♗d5?! (the consequences of 13 b3 ♗xf3+ 14 gf are unclear) permitted a combination: 13 ... ♖xd5! 14 ♗xd5 ♗xf2! 15 ♖xf2 ♗g4+ 16 ♖e1 ♖xe3 17 ♖e2 ♞fe8 18 ♖xe3 ♗xe3 19 ♗d2 ♗f2+ 20 ♖d1 ♞xe2, which led to a draw.

8 ♗xe5

In Dawson - Borg, Dubai Olympiad 1986, after the moves 8 ♖e2 0-0 (if 8 ... ♗xf3+ 9 ♖xf3 ♗e5 10 ♖e4!, White's chances are preferable), White decided to eliminate the dark-squared bishop with 9 ♗d4 d6 10 ♗a4 ♖a7 11 ♗b5. There followed 11 ... ♗g5! 12 g3 ♗e7 13 ♗xa7 ♞xa7 14 f4 ♗d7, and Black obtained an outpost on e4: 15 ♖f3 ♗f6 16 ♗c3 ♞e8 17 ♖f2 ♖f5 18 ♞e1 ♗e4+ 19 ♗xe4 ♖xe4, with a level game.

8 ... ♗xe5

9 ♖e2

At this point the complications following 9 ♗e4!?, which no-one has yet investigated, are of some interest: 9 ... ♖a7 (obviously after 9 ... ♖e7 10 ♗d4 d6 11 f4, the advantage is with White) 10 ♗d5 ♗c6 (after 10 ... ♗e7 11 ♗xa5 ♗xc4 12 ♗xc7, White is a pawn up with the better position) 11 ♖d2 0-0 (if 11 ... d6, White

has 12 ♖xa5 ♕e6 13 ♜b5, and the complications turn out in his favour) 12 ♖c3 (this time, capturing on a5 is risky in view of 12 ... ♖xe3) 12 ... d6, with adequate counterchances for Black (authors' analysis).

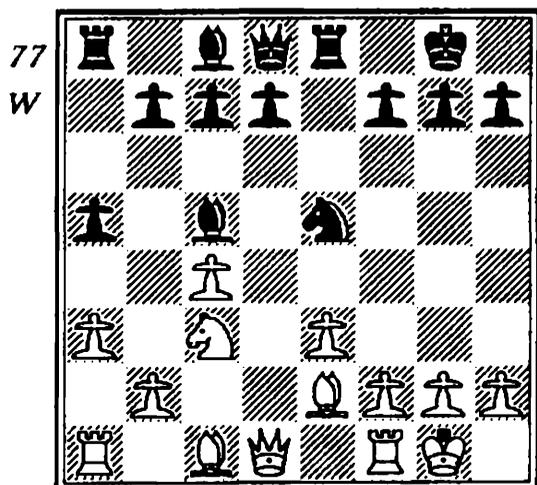
9 ... 0-0

A sound alternative is 9 ... d6, for example 10 ♖e4 ♖b6 11 b3 0-0 12 ♖b2 ♜e7 13 ♖g3 f5, as in Stachelin - Flohr, Berne 1932; or 10 0-0 0-0 11 ♖b1 (11 b3 ♖e8 transposes to variation B2) 11 ... ♖f5 12 e4 ♕e6 13 b3 ♜h4 as in Winkelmann - Treysman, USA 1936. In both cases the game is about equal.

10 0-0

For 10 b3 ♖e8, see variation B2

10 ... ♖e8 (77)



In this position White does best to play 11 b3, transposing into variation B2.

The alternative 11 ♖b1 allows Black good counterplay, for example:

a) 11 ... d6 12 b4 ♖a7 occurred in Tseitler - Nadianian, Erevan 1989. There followed 13 ♖b5 ♖b8 14 ♖d4 ♜h4 15 f3 (a mistake would be 15 ♖f3? ♖xf3+ 16 gf ♖e6 17 e4 ♖g6+ 18 ♜h1 ♖h3 19 ♖g1 ♜xf2, and Black wins) 15 ... c6 16 ♜e1 ♜e7 (16 ... ♜xe1!? was worth considering) 17 ♜h1 ab 18 ab ♖a2 19 ♜c3 ♜h4 (the outcome of 19 ... c5!? 20 ♖c2! ♜h4 is unclear; on the other hand 20 ♜b3? cd! 21 ♜xa2 d3 22 ♖d1 ♜h4 would give Black a strong attack) 20 ♖b2 ♖a8 21 ♜e1 ♜f6, with an equal game.

b) A game Buturin - Moroz, Ukraine 1986, went 11 ... ♖f8 12 b4 ab 13 ab d6 14 e4 c6 15 f4 ♖d7 16 ♖d3 g6 17 ♜h1 ♜h4 18 ♖b2 ♖f6 19 ♜f3 ♖g4 20 h3 ♖g7 21 ♖bel ♖d4, and it emerged that Black had a clear plus. There followed 22 ♖d1 ♖xb2 23 ♖xb2 ♖a2 24 ♖e2 ♖f6 25 ♜g1 ♖h5 26 ♖b1 ♖a1 27 ♖d2 ♜xf4 28 ♜d3 ♜g5 29 ♜xd6 ♖xh3 30 ♜c7 ♖e6 31 ♖d3 ♖f4, and Black went on to win.

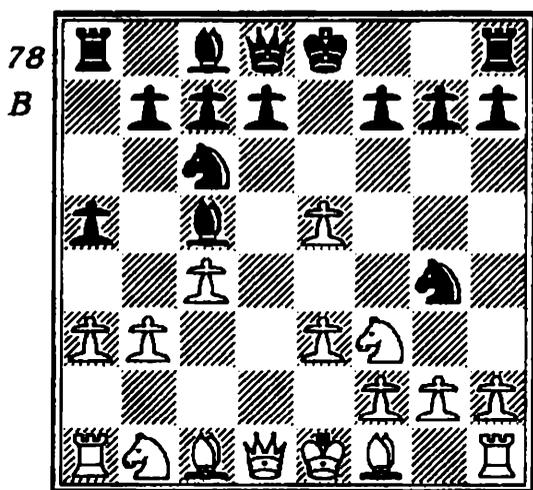
c) For 11 ... b6, see *Illustrative Game No. 14* (Gavrilov - Berdichevsky).

B2

7 b3 (78)

7 ... 0-0

Of course, 7 ... ♖gxe5 is



also possible; and now:

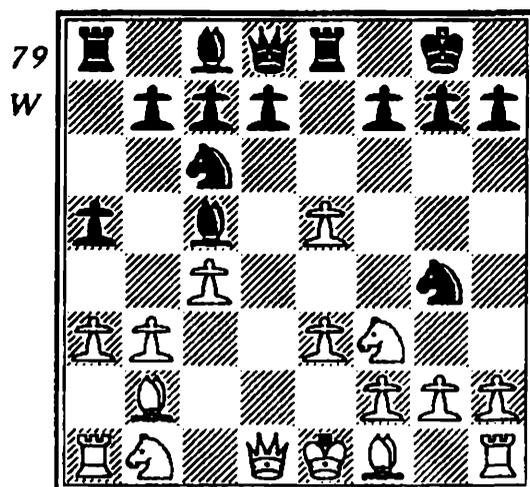
a) Stein - Shashin, Erevan 1965, continued 8 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 9 ♚b2 d6 10 ♚e2 0-0 11 0-0 ♜h4? (a gross mistake; instead 11 ... ♞e8 12 ♖c3 transposes into the main line), permitting White to gain a clear plus by 12 ♖c3 ♖g4 13 h3 ♖f6 14 ♚f3 ♞e8 15 ♖b5.

b) Practice has also seen 8 ♚b2 d6 9 ♚e2 0-0 10 0-0 ♖xf3+ 11 ♚xf3. In a game Debarnot - L. Bronstein, Argentina 1969, Black now played the inaccurate 11 ... ♚e6 12 ♖c3 f5, which allowed White to gain the advantage with 13 ♖d5 ♞b8 14 ♖f4 ♚f7 15 ♚d5. In place of 11 ... ♚e6, Black does better with 11 ... ♖e5 12 ♖c3 ♞e8! 13 ♚e2, transposing into the main line; but not 12 ... ♖xf3+? (as played in Longner - Trajkovic, Yugoslavia 1949), on account of 13 ♜xf3 ♜h4 (or 13 ... ♞e8 14 ♖e4) 14 ♖e4 ♚b6 15 g3 ♜e7 16 ♞ad1 f5 (if 16 ... ♚e6, then

17 ♖f6+ ♜h8 18 ♜h5) 17 ♖c3 c6 18 ♞d2, with a clear advantage to White.

8 ♖c3

Or 8 ♚b2 ♞e8, giving the following position (79):



In this situation, however surprising it may seem, winning chances arise for Black. For example:

a) 9 ♚d3 ♖cxe5 (for 9 ... d6, see *Illustrative Game No. 15*, Yrjola - Liew) 10 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 11 ♚xh7+ ♜xh7 12 ♜h5+ ♜g8 13 ♚xe5 ♜e7 14 ♚f4 (14 ♚b2 ♞a6) was played in Mawajovic - Taganon, Thessaloniki Olympiad 1988. Black now went wrong with 14 ... ♚d4?, and after 15 ♞a2 ♞a6 16 0-0 ♚c5 17 ♖c3 c6 18 ♞fa1 d6 19 ♞d1 White obtained a clear plus. However, Black had the following forcing line available: 14 ... ♜f6 15 ♞a2 ♜xf4 16 ♜xc5 ♞e5! 17 0-0 ♞xc5! (17 ... ♜xh2+ only gives equality) 18 ef a4, with the advantage (auth-

ors' analysis).

b) If White continues 'normally' with 9 ♕e2 ♗cxe5 10 ♗xe5 ♗xe5, he has wasted a tempo on the useless a2 - a3 (compared with similar positions under variation A), and is once again treading on dangerous ground. Examples are:

b1) 11 0-0 ♖a6 12 ♗d5 ♗g5 (12 ... ♗e7 13 ♗c3 ♖h6 is also good) 13 ♗c3 ♖d6 14 ♗e4 ♖xd5 15 ♗xg5 ♗xc4 16 ♕xc4 ♖xg5, and White was left a pawn down in Plachetka - Manouck, Thessaloniki Olympiad 1984.

b2) 11 ♗c3 transposes into the game Arencibia - Motwani, Dubai Olympiad 1986, which continued 11 ... ♖a6 12 ♗d5 ♖h6 13 ♕d4 d6 14 ♖a2 ♕f5 15 ♕xc5 dc 16 ♖d2 ♖d6 17 f3 ♗g6 18 e4 ♕c8 19 ♗e3 (if 19 0-0, then 19 ... ♗h8! threatening ... c7 - c6) 19 ... ♖d4 20 ♗c2, and after 20 ... ♖xd2 21 ♗xd2 ♗f6 22 0-0 ♖d8 23 ♗xa5 ♗f4 24 ♕d1 ♕h3 25 ♗e3 ♕xg2! 26 ♖e1 b6 White resigned.

8 ... ♖e8
9 ♕e2 ♗cxe5
10 ♗xe5 ♗xe5
11 0-0

But not 11 ♕b2? ♖a6, which transposes into Arencibia - Motwani (see the previous note).

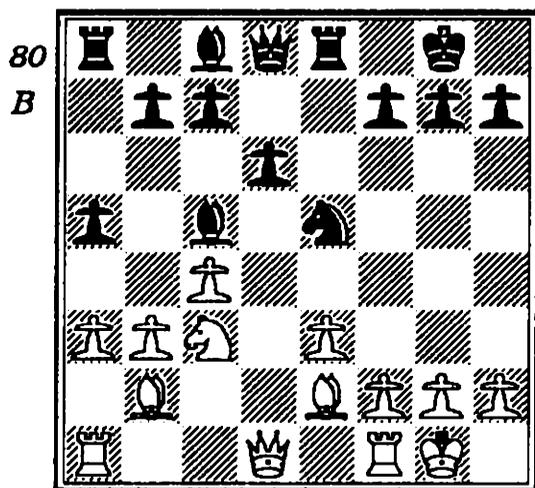
11 ... d6

On the basis of a game Bolbochan - Michel, Mar del Plata 1942, the continuation 11 ... ♖a6 has been considered dubious on account of 12 ♗d5 ♗g6? 13 ♕b2 ♗h4 14 g3 ♗g6 15 b4, with a clear advantage to White. But in this example, Black's play was highly illogical. Instead of 12 ... ♗g6? it was worth considering 12 ... ♖h6, and if 13 e4 (recommended by *ECO*), then 13 ... ♖ee6!, since acceptance of the exchange sacrifice is dangerous: 14 ♕xh6 ♖xh6 15 g3 d6 16 b4 ♗d7 17 ♗f4 g5, with powerful threats. At move 12, Black could also play 12 ... ♖d6!? 13 ♗c2 c6, and if 14 ♗c3, then 14 ... ♖g6; or if 14 ♗f4, then 14 ... ♖h6 (authors' analysis).

12 ♕b2 (80)

The variation 12 ♗a4?! is risky for White; after 12 ... b6! 13 ♕d2 ♗h4 14 b4 ♖e6! 15 bc ♖h6, he is struggling to find a satisfactory defence. For example: 16 f3 ♗xh2+ 17 ♗f2 ♖g6 18 ♖g1 ♗g3+ 19 ♗f1 ♕h3 20 ♕c3 ♗h4 21 gh ♗xh3+ 22 ♗f2 ♗h2+ 23 ♗e1 ♗xf3+! and White is mated. However, after 16 h3 ♖g6! 17 ♗h2 ♖xg2+! 18 ♗xg2 ♗xh3+ 19 ♗g1 ♗g4 20 ♕xg4 ♕xg4 21 f3 ♗g3+ a draw results.

After the text move, we reach this position.



ECO assesses the situation as favourable to White, on the basis of 12 ...

♖h4 13 ♖d5 (13 ♖b5), and then b2 - b4; or 12 ... ♕f5 13 ♖b5 c6 14 ♖d4 ♕d7 15 ♖d2, with b2 - b4 to follow.

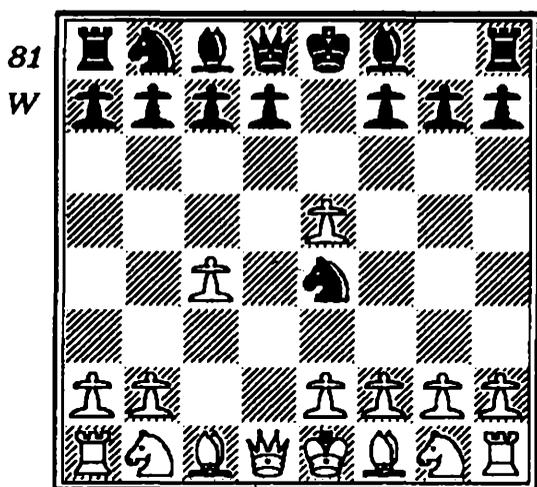
It is hard to agree with this, since Black has other possibilities at his disposal; for instance 12 ... ♕d7, 12 ... b6, or 12 ... ♖e6.

It is also worth considering 12... ♖g6 13 ♕f3 c6 14 ♖e4 ♕f5 15 ♖xc5 dc, with a good game for Black.

In other words, in the diagrammed position, the struggle still lies ahead.

5) 3 ... ♞e4

- 1 d4 ♞f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♞e4 (81)



It was the German player S Fajarowicz who drew attention to the possibility of this ingenious move, playing it for the first time against Steiner in the Wiesbaden tournament of 1928.

From the diagram, there are three continuations we shall analyse in detail.

- A 4 ♞c3
 B 4 ♜c2
 C 4 ♞f3

But first let us examine some other options for White:

- a) 4 ♜d5 f5 5 ef ♞xf6

occurred in Camara - Flores, Sao Paulo 1937. After 6 ♜d1 ♞c5 7 ♞f3 0-0, Black has sufficient compensation for the pawn.

b) 4 ♜d4 ♞c5 5 ♞f3 ♞c6 6 ♜d5 was played in Glig - Fajarowicz, Bautzen 1929. There followed 6 ... d6 7 ♞g5 ♜d7 8 ♞c3 ♞b4 9 ♜d2 de 10 0-0-0 ♜xd2+ 11 ♞xd2 f6 12 ♞h4 ♞e6 13 a3 ♞c6 14 b4 ♞d7 15 ♜b2, and now with 15 ... a5 Black could have seized the initiative on the queenside.

c) 4 a3 and now:

c1) 4 ... ♞c6 5 ♜c2 (for 5 ♞f3, see chapter 6, variation B) 5 ... d5 6 ed ♞xd6, or 6 ... ♞f5, with enough counterplay for the pawn.

c2) 4 ... a5 5 ♞d2 ♞c5 6 b3 (if 6 ♞f3, then 6 ... a4) 6 ... ♜e7 (6 ... g6!? deserves attention) 7 ♞gf3 (after 7 ♞df3 ♞c6 8 ♞b2 ♞a6; Black has good prospects) 7 ... ♞c6 8 ♞b2 d6 9 b4 ab 10 ab ♞xa1 11 ♜xa1 ♞xb4 12 ♜a8, with chances for both sides; Abrahams - Lenton, London 1938.

c3) 4 ... ♖h4 when White has:

c31) 5 g3 ♖h5 6 ♖d2 ♖xd2 7 ♖xd2 ♖c6 8 ♖f3 ♖xe5 9 ♖e3 d6 10 ♖g2 ♖e7 11 ♖xe5 ♖xe5, with equality; O'Kelly - Bisguier, San Juan 1969. In Naumkin - Mohr, Voskresensk 1990, White undertook to strengthen the variation with 6 ♖d5 ♖c5 7 ♖d2, and after 7 ... ♖c6? 8 b4 ♖a4? (better 8 ... ♖e6 9 ♖b2 a5 10 b5 ♖e7 11 ♖f3 ♖xf3 12 ♖gxf3 b6, with definite counterplay) 9 ♖gf3 ♖g6 10 ♖g2, he obtained a clear plus. However, with 7 ... a5! 8 b3 (8 ♖gf3 a4) 8 ... ♖c6 9 ♖b2 ♖g6! (the threat was 10 e6) 10 ♖c1 b6, Black could have acquired good counter chances (authors' analysis).

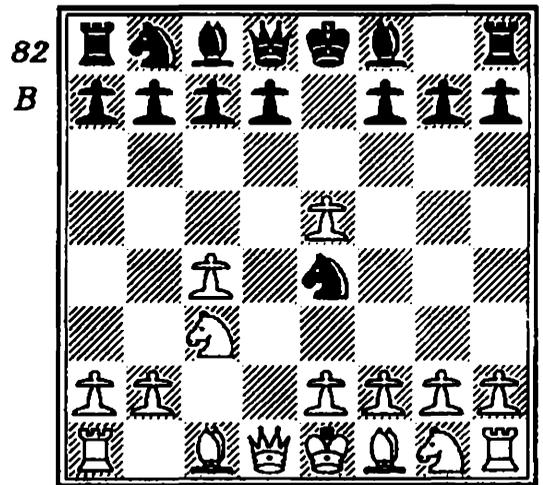
c32) 5 ♖e3 ♖c5 6 ♖xc5 (in a game Whiteley - Knox, England 1990, White was forced to capitulate after 6 ♖d3?? ♖xf2) 6 ... ♖xc5 7 e3 ♖c6 8 ♖f3 ♖h5 9 b4 ♖e6 10 ♖d5 a5 11 b5 ♖e7 12 ♖e4 ♖c5 13 ♖h4 ♖f5 14 ♖bd2 ♖g6 15 ♖d4 b6 16 ♖e2 ♖b7 17 0-0 0-0, with the better game for Black; Silman - Kelson, Portland 1987.

d) 4 ♖d2. If Black now plays 4 ... ♖b4, then 5 ♖c2 leads to variation B2, while 5 a3 ♖xd2+ 6 ♖xd2 ♖xd2 7 ♖xd2 ♖c6 8 ♖f3 transposes to chapter 6, variation A1.

Black may also reply 4 ... ♖c5; then 5 a3 a5 transposes to note 'c2' above, whereas 5 ♖gf3 ♖c6 is chapter 6, variation A2. In Engels - Keller, Vienna 1939, White instead tried 5 b4!?, and there followed 5 ... ♖e6 6 a3 a5 7 b5 d6 8 ed ♖xd6 9 ♖gf3 0-0 10 e3 ♖d7, with the better game for Black.

A

4 ♖c3 (82)



4 ... ♖b4

The simplest continuation here is 4 ... ♖xc3 5 bc b6!, fixing White's pawn weaknesses and retaining good chances of winning back the gambit pawn.

5 ♖c2 d5

5 ... ♖xc3+ 6 bc ♖c5 also deserves attention.

6 ed

White gains nothing with 6 cd, since after 6 ... ♖xd5! 7 ♖f3 ♖f5 8 ♖d2 ♖xc3 9 ♖xc3 ♖g3 10 e4 ♖xe4+! 11 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 the game is level.

6 ... ♕f5

7 ♖d2

After 7 ♖b3 Black's initiative develops unimpeded. A game Deutgen - Schmid, Celle 1948, continued 7 ... ♖c6 8 ♖f3 ♖xd6 9 e3 0-0-0 10 ♕e2 (after 10 a3 ♖c5 White loses his queen) 10 ... ♖g6! 11 ♖h4 ♖f6 12 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 13 0-0 ♖c5, and White resigned.

7 ... ♖xd6

A different capture, 7 ... ♕xc3, also deserves consideration. Schmid's analysis goes: 8 ♕xc3 ♖g3 9 e4 ♕xe4 10 ♖d3 ♕xd3 11 ♖xd3 ♖xh1 12 ♕xg7 ♖g8 13 ♖e4+ ♖d7 14 0-0-0, and he assesses the position as won for White.

And yet after 14 ... ♖g5+ 15 ♖d2 (15 f4 ♖f2) 15 ... ♖c6, Black has a clear plus. Nor does 14 ♖d1 work, in view of 14 ... ♖e8 15 dc+ ♖xc7 16 ♕e5+ ♖c8, when Black extricates himself and remains with a material advantage. In this situation the best thing White can do is draw by repetition: 14 ♖f5+ ♖e8 15 ♖e4+ etc.

8 ♖b3

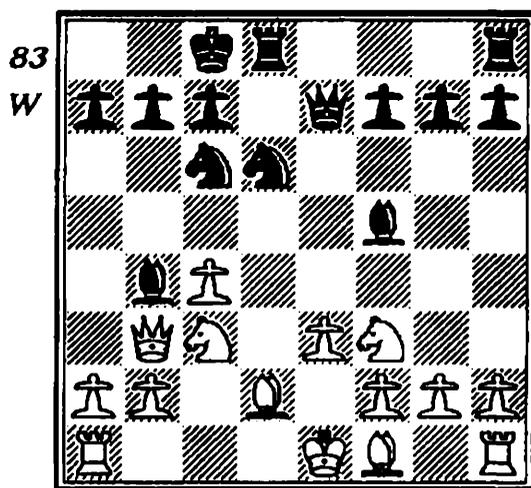
A game de Carbonnel - Starke, Leipzig 1953, went 8 e4 ♕xc3 (after 8 ... ♖xe4 9 ♖a4+ ♖c6 10 ♖xe4, or 9 ... b5 10 ♖xb5+ c6 11 ♖e5+, Black comes out a piece down) 9 ♕xc3 (9 ♖xc3 ♖xe4 10 ♖e5+ ♖e7 leads to equal-

ity) 9 ... ♕xe4 10 ♖d2 0-0 11 0-0-0, with chances for both sides.

8 ... ♖c6

9 e3 ♖e7

10 ♖f3 0-0-0 (83)



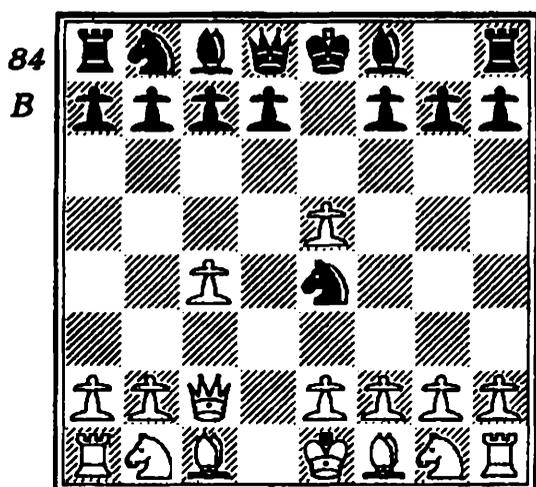
Ackermann - Meyer, corr. 1958, continued 11 ♖d5 ♕xd2+ 12 ♖xd2 ♖e6 13 ♖f4 ♖f6 14 ♕e2 g5 15 ♖d5 ♖e6 16 0-0-0 ♖b8 17 ♕f3 ♖e5 and Black has sufficient compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

According to *ECO*, White should play 11 ♕e2 and if 11 ... g5, then 12 0-0 with a clear advantage. But Black can play more strongly: 11 ... ♖e4 12 ♖d5 (12 ♖xe4 ♕xe4) 12 ... ♕xd2+ 13 ♖xd2 ♖e6, again with good counterplay for the pawn (authors' analysis).

B

4 ♖c2 (84)

In this position Black's usual choices are:



B1 4 ... d5
B2 4 ... ♕b4+

But 4 ... ♖c5 is also worth considering. A game Weinstein - Sher, USA 1957, continued 5 ♖f3 ♖c6 6 a3 a5 7 ♕f4 ♖e6?! 8 ♕g3 ♕c5 9 e3 b6 10 ♖c3 ♕b7 11 ♕d3 ♖g5 12 ♖xg5 ♗xg5 13 0-0 0-0-0 (if 13 ... ♖xe5, then 14 f4 ♕xe3+ 15 ♖h1) 14 ♖d5! and, having secured his pawn, White went over to the attack with the threat of b2 - b4.

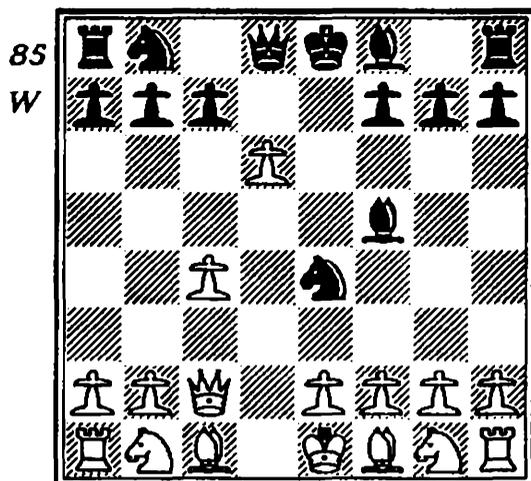
Our impression is that Black chose the wrong plan. Instead of 7 ... ♖e6, he could have played 7 ... a4 8 ♖c3 ♖a5 9 e3 ♖ab3 with definite compensation for the pawn (authors' analysis).

B1
4 ... d5
5 e4

In Rubinstein - Becker, Vienna 1932, White played 5

e3, and there followed 5 ... ♖c6 6 ♖f3 ♕f5 7 ♗d1 dc 8 ♗xd8+ ♖xd8 9 ♕xc4 ♕b4+ 10 ♖e2 ♖a5 with advantage to Black.

5 ... ♕f5 (85)



6 ♖c3

After other replies, the Black initiative can prove very dangerous. For example:

a) The strange move 6 f3, recommended by *ECO*, allows Black an immediate win with 6 ... ♗h4+ (but not 6 ... ♖g3 7 e4) 7 g3 ♖xg3 (authors' analysis).

b) 6 ♗a4+ was played in Steiner - Fajarowicz, Wiesbaden 1928. There followed 6 ... ♖c6 7 ♖f3 ♕xd6 8 a3 ♗f6 9 g3 0-0-0 10 ♖bd2 ♖c5 11 ♗d1 ♖he8 12 ♕g2 ♕d3! 13 e3 ♕e5 14 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 15 f4 ♕xc4, with a won game. This was the first time the Fajarowicz system was used in a serious tournament game.

c) 6 ♗b3 ♕xd6 7 ♖d2 0-0 8 ♗xb7 occurred in Gilfer -

Richter, Munich Olympiad 1936; Black replied 8 ... ♕c5 9 e3 ♜e7 10 ♗df3 ♖b4+ 11 ♗d2 ♗xd2 12 ♗xd2 ♗e4 13 ♜b5 ♖d8 14 0-0-0 ♜d6, winning.

d) 6 dc ♜xc7 7 ♜a4+ ♗c6 8 ♗f3 0-0-0 9 ♗d2 (or 9 ♗bd2 ♗c5 10 ♜d1 ♗b4) 9 ... ♜b6 10 ♜b3 ♜xf2+ 11 ♖d1 ♖b4, and Black wins; Krashev - Donev, Bulgaria 1954.

6 ... ♗xd6

After 6 ... ♗g3 7 ♜a4+ ♗d7 8 ♗b5; or 6 ... ♗xc3 7 ♜xf5 ♗a4 8 ♜b5+; or finally, 6 ... ♗xd6 7 ♗xe4 0-0 8 f3 ♜h4+ 9 g3 ♗xg3+ 10 hg ♜xh1 11 ♗e3, White acquires a decisive plus.

7 e4 ♗xe4

According to Tartakower, other replies favour White, for example:

a) 7 ... ♗e6 8 b3 and White retains his pawn.

b) 7 ... ♗g6 8 c5! ♗xe4 9 ♗xe4 ♜e7 10 ♗d3 ♗xe4 (if 10 ... f5, then 11 ♗g5) 11 ♗xe4 f5 12 ♗e3 fe 13 0-0-0 ♗c6 (if 13 ... ♜e6, White can continue 14 ♖b1 ♗c6 15 ♗e2 ♗b4 16 ♜a4+) 14 ♗e2 ♜e6 15 ♗c3, with a clear advantage to White.

c) 7 ... ♗xe4 8 ♗xe4 ♜e7 9 ♗d3 ♗xe4 10 ♗xe4 f5, and now:

c1) Tartakower gives 11 ♗d2 ♗c6 12 0-0-0 fe 13 ♖e1 0-0-0 14 ♜xe4, which allows Black definite counter-

play after 14 ... ♜c5. Also, apart from 11 ... ♗c6, Black has 11 ... ♜xe4+ 12 ♜xe4 fe, and if 13 ♗c3 (13 0-0-0 ♗c5) 13 ... ♗c5 14 ♗xg7 ♖g8 15 ♗e5 ♖xg2 16 ♗g3, then 16 ... e3 17 ♖f1 ef 18 ♗h3 ♖g1+, with about equal chances.

c2) 11 ♗g5! is stronger: 11 ... ♜xe4+ 12 ♜xe4+ fe 13 0-0-0 ♗c6 14 ♖e1, and White wins a pawn, maintaining a clear plus (authors' analysis).

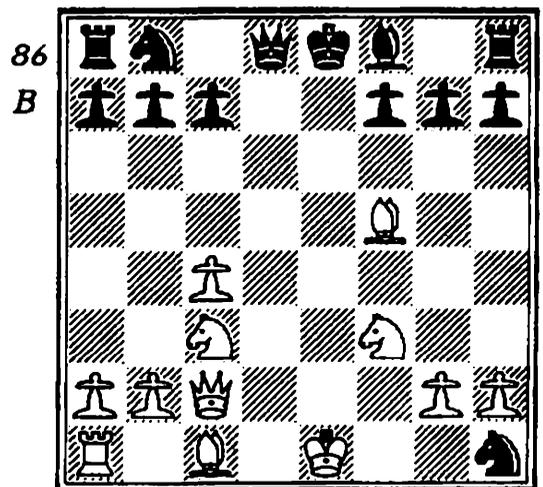
8 ♗d3

Now 8 ♗xe4 is met by 8 ... ♖b4+ 9 ♗d2 (but not 9 ♖e2? on account of 9 ... ♗c6 10 ♗e3 ♜e7 11 f3 0-0-0, which favours Black) 9 ... ♗xd2+ 10 ♜xd2 ♗xe4, with full equality.

8 ... ♗xf2

9 ♗xf5 ♗xh1

10 ♗f3 (86)



In this critical position, the game Kottnauer - Martin, Zurich 1946, continued 10 ... ♗c5 11 ♗e4 ♜e7 12 ♗g5 f6 13 0-0-0 ♗a6 14 ♖d7 ♜xd7 15 ♗xd7+ ♖xd7 16

♗xc5+ ♗xc5 17 ♖f5+ ♗e6 18
 ♗d4 ♖ae8 19 ♖d5+ ♗c8 20
 ♗xe6 fg 21 ♗c5 and White
 won.

Black can play 10 ... ♗d6,
 so as to answer 11 ♗e4 with
 11 ... ♗xh2 12 ♗xh2 ♖h4+ 13
 g3 ♗xg3 14 ♗xg3 ♖xg3+ 15
 ♗f1 ♗c6, with chances for
 both sides, but Borik gives
 12 ♗g5! (Ed.). Instead of 11
 ♗e4 it is worth considering
 11 ♖e4+! ♖e7 12 ♗c8! ♗d7 13
 ♗xd7+ ♗xd7 14 ♖xe7+ ♗xe7
 15 ♗f1 ♗d6 16 ♗g1 ♗g3 17 hg
 ♗xg3 18 ♗e4 ♗d6 19 c5, and
 White's position is to be
 preferred (authors' analy-
 sis).

B2

4 ... ♗b4+

5 ♗d2

5 ♗c3 transposes to var-
 iation A.

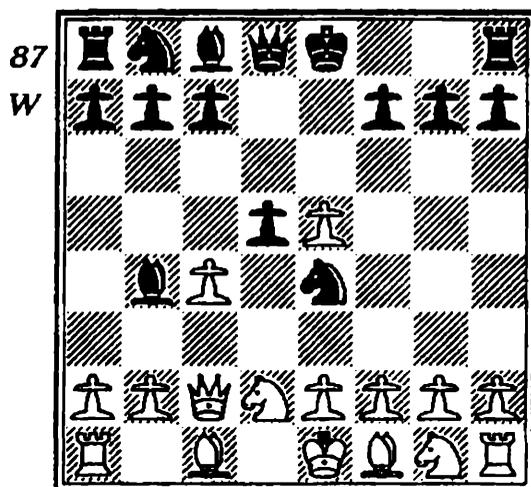
5 ... d5 (87)

Exchanging with 5 ...
 ♗xd2+ 6 ♗xd2 ♗xd2 7 ♖xd2
 eases White's task. In Lok-
 venc - Palatas, Vienna 1943,
 there followed 7 ... ♗c6 (7
 ... 0-0 8 f4 b6 deserved
 consideration) 8 f4 0-0 9
 ♗f3 f6 10 ef ♖xf6 11 e3 d6 12
 ♗d3 a5 13 0-0, and Black
 failed to obtain adequate
 compensation for the pawn.

6 e3

For 6 ♗f3 see *Illustrative
 Game No. 16* (Stohl - Trapl).

The capture 6 ed ♗f5
 allows Black to become



dangerously active, for ex-
 ample:

a) Laghkva - Contendini,
 Leipzig Olympiad 1960,
 went 7 ♖a4+ ♗c6 8 a3 ♗c5
 9 dc (9 ♖d1 ♗d4) 9 ... ♖e7 10
 ♖d1 ♗d3 mate.

b) 7 dc ♖xc7 8 ♖a4+ ♗c6
 9 ♗f3 0-0-0 10 a3 gives
 Black an irresistible attack,
 thus:

b1) A game Plesse - Wolf,
 West Germany 1965, contin-
 ued 10 ... ♗c5 11 ♖d1 ♖he8
 12 e3 ♗d3+ 13 ♗xd3 ♗xd3 14
 ♖a4 ♖b6 15 ab ♖xe3+ 16 ♗d1
 ♗e2+ 17 ♗c2 ♗xb4+ 18 ♖xb4
 ♖g6+, and mate next move.

b2) In an earlier corres-
 pondence game Mues -
 Reinhardt, 1934, Black
 found a simpler and more
 elegant way: 10 ... ♗xd2+ 11
 ♗xd2 ♗xd2 12 ♗xd2 ♖xd2!
 13 ♗xd2 ♖e5 with unans-
 werable threats.

6 ... ♗f5

7 ♗d3 ♖g5

The strongest way to
 continue the attack. In
 Milic - Möhring, match Yu-

good counterplay.

b2) If 5 ed ♖xd6 6 e3 (6 g3? is a blunder because of 6 ... ♗xf2!, and Black wins; this happened in Phipps - Davis, London 1950, and also in a correspondence game(!) Warren - Zelman, 1939), then after 6 ... ♗c6 7 ♗bd2 ♗c5 8 a3 ♗f6 9 ♗b3 ♗xb3 10 ♗xb3 ♖g4! Black again has good prospects; Strasdas - Richter, Berlin 1933.

b3) The correct line is 5 ♗c2!, and if 5 ... ♖f5 (5 ... ♗c5!? is worth considering), then after 6 ♗c3! d5 7 cd ♖b4 8 ♗b3! White retains a decisive material advantage.

5 ♖d2

5 ♗bd2 d5 (5 ... ♗c6 transposes to chapter 6, variation A1) 6 ed ♗xd6 7 e3 occurred in Ivkov - Persitz, Copenhagen 1953. Black now continued 7 ... ♗c6 8 ♖e2 ♖f5 9 0-0 ♗h6 10 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 11 ♗a4 0-0-0 12 a3 ♖d6 13 h3 f5 14 ♗d2 ♖he8 15 ♗xe4 fe, with sufficient compensation for the pawn. If White plays 7 a3 (instead of 7 e3) there can follow 7 ... ♖xd2+ 8 ♗xd2 ♗c5 9 e3 (9 ♗f3 is worse on account of 9 ... ♗xd1+ 10 ♗xd1 ♗b3) 9 ... ♗c6 (but not 9 ... ♖f5? 10 ♗f3, and the advantage passes to White) 10 ♖e2 ♖f5 11 0-0 0-0-0,

and once again Black has quite good prospects in return for the pawn (authors' analysis).

5 ... ♗xd2

5 ... ♖c5 is weak in view of 6 e3 ♗c6 7 ♗c3 ♗xd2 8 ♗xd2, with advantage; Opocensky - Zita, Karlovy Vary 1948.

6 ♗bxd2 ♗c6 7 a3 ♖f8!

This is the point! Usually Black has automatically played 7 ... ♖xd2+ 8 ♗xd2, leading to a position in chapter 6 (variation A1) which favours White. Now however, Black not only makes sure of recovering the gambit pawn, he also preserves the advantage of the bishop pair.

8 ♗c2

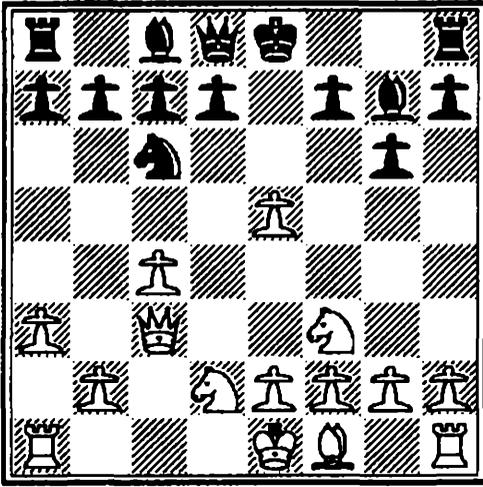
8 ♗e4 is answered by 8 ... ♗e7 9 ♗d5 b6.

8 ... g6

Black has no need to renounce his intended plan, although another theoretical possibility is 8 ... ♗e7 9 ♗c3 b6 10 b4 a5 11 b5 ♗d8 with complex play.

9 ♗c3 ♖g7 (90)

In this position, with the advantage of the two bishops, Black has at least equal chances. A game Vol - Glaskov, Moscow 1990, continued 10 ♗e4 (after 10 c5 ♗e7 11 ♗c4 b5, or 11 ... ♗xc5, Black has the advan-

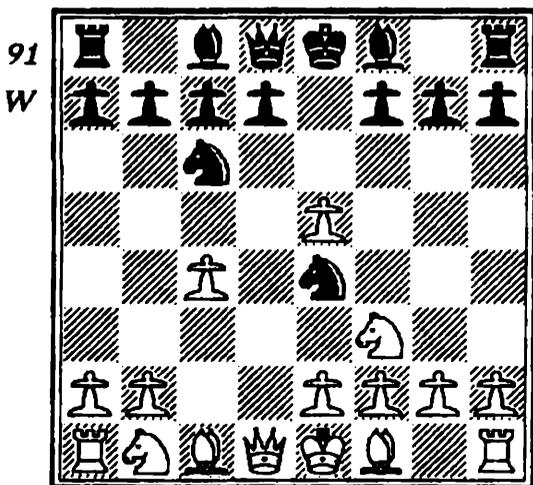
90
W

tage) 10 ... ♘xe5! 11 ♘xe5
 ♙e7 12 f4 d6 with the better
 game for Black.

From the diagram, a
 better line for White is 10
 g3 ♙e7 11 ♙g2 ♘xe5 12 ♙c2,
 but Black's chances are
 still to be preferred.

6) 3 ... ♘e4 4 ♘f3 ♘c6

1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♘e4
 4 ♘f3 ♘c6 (91)



In the last chapter we saw that, according to recent investigations, 4 ... ♘b4+ secures Black a satisfactory game. After the text move, which is seen a good deal more often, his task is more complicated.

From the diagram, there are two replies we shall examine in detail:

A 5 ♘bd2
 B 5 a3

But first let us look at some other possibilities:

a) 5 e3 d6 6 ed ♘xd6

transposes to chapter 5, variation C, note 'b2', to Black's 4th move.

b) 5 ♘f4 ♘c5 6 e3 ♘b4+ 7 ♘bd2 g5 8 ♘g3 h5 9 h3 ♘xg3 10 fg ♖e7, with a clear plus for Black: Papagopoulos - Steiner, Dubrovnik 1950.

c) 5 ♖c2 ♘b4+ (5 ... d5 6 ed ♘f5 7 ♘c3 ♘xd6 8 e4 ♘g6 is also playable), and after either 6 ♘c3 or 6 ♘bd2 (6 ♘d2 ♘xd2 7 ♘bxd2 ♖e7), Black plays 6 ... d5 with good prospects.

d) 5 ♘c3 ♘b4 6 ♖c2 d5 with counterplay on the lines of chapter 5, variation A.

e) 5 ♖d5, and now:

e1) ECO advocates 5 ... f5 but after 6 ef ♘xf6 7 ♖d3 ♘b4+ 8 ♘c3, White has an extra tempo compared with similar variations in chapter 3, and this gives him a clear advantage.

e2) A game Blümich - Fajarowicz, Germany 1930, went 5 ... ♘b4+ 6 ♘d2 ♘xd2 7 ♘bxd2 ♖e7 8 0-0-0 ♘xd2+ 9 ♖xd2 b6?, whereupon

with 10 ♗d4! White kept his extra pawn with the better position. However, 9 ... a6! would have given Black every chance of equalising.

e3) 5 ... ♗c5 is also worth considering. A game Fuster - Honfi, Hungary 1950, continued 6 g3 d6 7 ♗g5 f6 8 ef gf 9 ♗h4 ♗e6 10 ♖d2 ♗g7 (if 10 ... ♗xc4, then 11 ♖f4) 11 ♗d4! ♗xc4 12 ♗f5 0-0 13 ♗g2, with the better chances for White. But this example is unconvincing, since Black can improve with 7 ... ♖d7! (instead of 7 ... f6), or (a move earlier) with the prophylactic 6 ... h6!, offering good prospects.

A

5 ♗bd2

We consider two replies for Black:

A1 5 ... ♗b4

A2 5 ... ♗c5

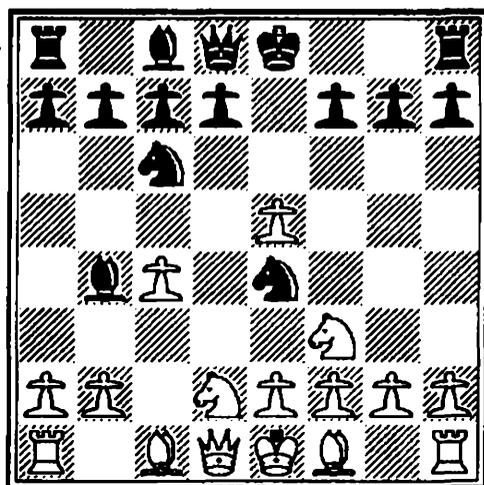
A1

5 ... ♗b4 (92)

6 a3

White has these alternatives:

a) 6 ♖c2 d5! 7 ed ♗f5 8 ♖d1 ♖xd6, and Black has a splendid attacking position. A game Kevitz - Hagen, USA 1963, continued 9 a3 ♗xd2+ 10 ♗xd2 0-0-0 11 ♖c1



♖he8 12 b4 ♗d4 13 ♗xd4 ♖xd4 14 ♗e3 ♖e5 15 ♗f4 ♖d1+! with a won position for Black.

b) 6 g3 d6 (6 ... ♖e7 is also playable) 7 ed ♖xd6 8 a3 ♖c5 9 e3 ♗xd2+ 10 ♗xd2 ♗xd2 11 ♗xd2 ♗e6 12 ♖c2 0-0-0! 13 ♗e2 (if 13 b4, then 13 ... ♖h5) 13 ... ♗e5, and Black has excellent counterplay for the pawn.

c) 6 e3, and now:

c1) A game Karlin - Reinhardt, Germany 1935, went 6 ... 0-0 7 ♗d3 d5 8 ed ♗c5 9 ♗c2 ♖xd6, and after 10 a3 ♗xd2+ 11 ♖xd2 ♖h6 12 b4 ♗e6 13 0-0 ♖d8 14 ♖c3 White repulsed the attack, remaining with an extra pawn.

c2) 6 ... ♖e7 is better, and if 7 ♗e2 ♗xe5 8 0-0 ♗xd2 9 ♗xd2 as in Podgajets - Krutikhin, USSR 1972, then after 9 ... ♖e6! Black is okay (authors' analysis).

6 ... ♗xd2

7 ♗xd2

We should also consider

100 3 ... ♖e4 4 ♗f3 ♗c6

the variation 7 ♗xd2 ♗xd2+ 8 ♗xd2 ♗xe5 9 ♗c3, to which Black has the following replies:

a) 9 ... f6 10 e4 ♗e7 11 f4 ♗f7 12 ♗d3 d6 13 0-0, with advantage to White; Polas - Muller, corr. 1929.

b) 9 ... d6 10 e3 0-0 11 ♗d4 c5 12 ♗f4, and according to *ECO* White has the advantage. However, in place of the anti-positional 11 ... c5, Black has the improvement 11 ... f6, with chances for both sides.

c) 9 ... ♗e7, and now:

c1) Spielmann - Weill, Vienna 1937, went 10 e3 0-0 11 ♗e2 d6 12 0-0 ♗f5? 13 c5 dc 14 ♗d5 ♗fe8 15 ♗xb7, with the better position for White. To avoid this possibility, Black would do better with 12 ... ♗e6 (or 12 ... f6), and if 13 c5, then 13 ... ♗fd8 14 ♗c2 f6, with a sound position.

c2) A game Zilberman - Krutikhin, USSR 1975, went 10 ♗d4 f6 11 e3 d6 12 ♗e2, when Black could have played 12 ... ♗e6!, intending (either quickly or after suitable preparation with ... ♗f7, ... ♗d7, ... c6), to carry out ... d6 - d5, with an equal game.

The text move (7 ♗xd2) is stronger.

7 ... ♗xd2+
8 ♗xd2 ♗e7

9 ♗c3

There is no sense in relinquishing the gambit pawn at once. For example, in Planas - Milner-Barry, Helsinki Olympiad 1952, 9 g3 ♗xe5 10 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 11 ♗g2 0-0 12 0-0 d6 13 ♗ac1 ♗e8 14 e3 led to a position with roughly equal chances.

With the text move, White aims to establish his queen's rook on d5.

9 ... 0-0

At this point Borik recommends preparation for queenside castling: 9 ... b6 10 e3 ♗b7 11 ♗e2 0-0-0, and if 12 ♗d1, then 12 ... ♗de8! 13 ♗d5 g5!, creating kingside counterplay. But essentially this does not alter matters, since instead of 12 ♗d1 White has the stronger 12 0-0-0!, with the same ideas as in the main variation.

10 ♗d1 ♗e8
11 ♗d5 b6
12 e3 ♗b7
13 ♗e2 ♗ad8
14 0-0 ♗b8

In Szabo - Macelle, Hungary 1946, 14 ... ♗a5 was met by 15 b4!, maintaining the advantage.

15 ♗d2 (93)

For 15 ♗c1!?, see *Illustrative Game No. 17* (Smyslov - Steiner).

A game Averkin - Pavlenko, USSR 1972, contin-

White has a whole range of replies to this retreat. We shall examine two of them in detail:

A21 6 g3

A22 6 a3

Note also:

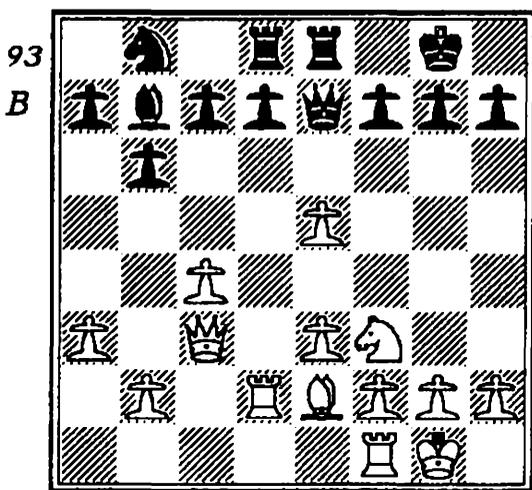
a) 6 e4 d6 7 ed ♖xd6 8 a3 a5 9 ♗c2 0-0 10 ♗e2 f5, and Black has an excellent position for the pawn; Cavalcanti - Engels, Recife 1947.

b) 6 e3 d6 (6 ... ♗e7 7 a3 transposes into variation A22) 7 ed ♖xd6 8 ♗e2 ♗f6, with enough compensation for the sacrificed pawn. In Lputian - Eolian, Erevan 1977, the continuation was 9 ♖b3 0-0 10 0-0 ♖d8 11 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 12 ♗b3 a5 13 ♗d2 a4 14 ♗c3 ♗g6 15 ♖fd1 ♗h3 16 ♗f1 ♗g4 17 ♗e2 ♗h3, and the game ended in a draw.

c) 6 ♖b3, and now:

c1) Kozul - Mohr, Vidmar Memorial 1989, continued 6 ... ♖e4 7 a3 d6 8 ♗d5 ♗f5 9 ed ♖xd6 10 ♖c5 ♗f6 11 e4, and now Black played an interesting piece sacrifice: 11 ... 0-0-0! 12 ef ♖e8 13 ♖e4 ♗e7 14 f6 ♖xf6 15 ♗f5+ ♖d7 16 ♗e3 ♗xe4, resulting in equal chances.

c2) In an earlier game, Stahlberg - Reinhardt, Niendorf 1934, Black chose a different course: 6 ... f6!? 7 ef ♗xf6 8 g3 ♖e4 9 a3 ♖e5

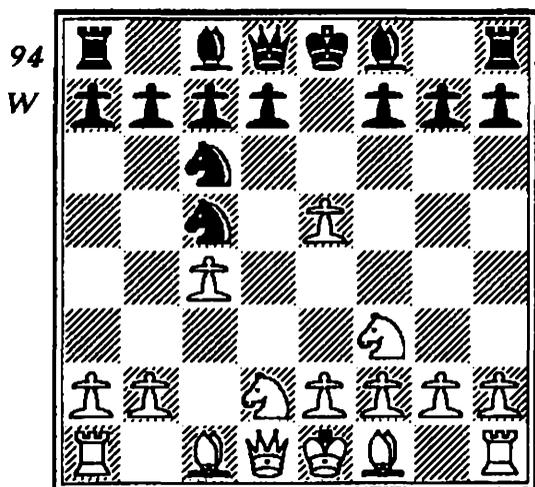


ued 15 ... a5 16 ♖df1 h6 17 b4 ♖xf3, when White could have obtained the better game with 18 ♖xf3! ab 19 ab ♗xe5 20 ♗b3.

From the diagram, Smyslov suggested that 15 ... ♖xf3 16 ♖xf3 ♗xe5 would give equality, but practice has not borne this out. Silman - Wolski, Annaheim 1989, continued 17 ♗c2 d6 18 b4 ♗f6 19 ♖fd1 ♖d7 20 ♖c6 ♖e7 21 c5!, and after 21 ... ♖e5 22 ♗e4 h6 23 h3 b5 24 cd cd 25 ♗d5 a6 26 ♖d4 ♖ee8 27 ♗c7 White obtained a winning position.

A2

5 ... ♖c5 (94)

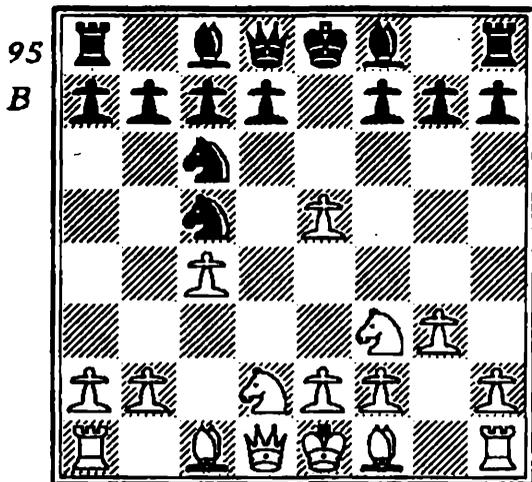


102 3 ... ♖e4 4 ♖f3 ♖c6

10 ♖g2 ♖xc4, and after 11 0-0 c6 12 ♖fd4 d5 Black's chances turned out to be preferable.

A21

6 g3 (95)



The idea of this variation is to occupy d5.

6 ... d6

This line is considered the most promising. But first let us look at some alternatives:

a) A game Keres - Mikulka, corr. 1938, went 6 ... d5 7 cd ♖xd5 8 ♖g2 ♖xe5 9 0-0 a5? (better 9 ... ♖d7). There followed 10 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 11 ♖c4 ♖f6 12 ♖f4 ♖e6 13 ♖c1 ♖d4 14 b3 ♖xc4 15 ♖d1 ♖f6 16 ♖xc4, with advantage to White.

b) 6 ... h5 7 a3 ♖e7 8 b4 (8 ♖g2 is also good) 8 ... ♖xe5 occurred in Koppe - Hain, Siegen 1941. White now blundered with 9 bc??, and was mated by 9 ... ♖d3. Yet with 9 ♖g2 ♖cd3+ 10 ed! ♖xf3+ 11 ♖f1 ♖xd2+ 12

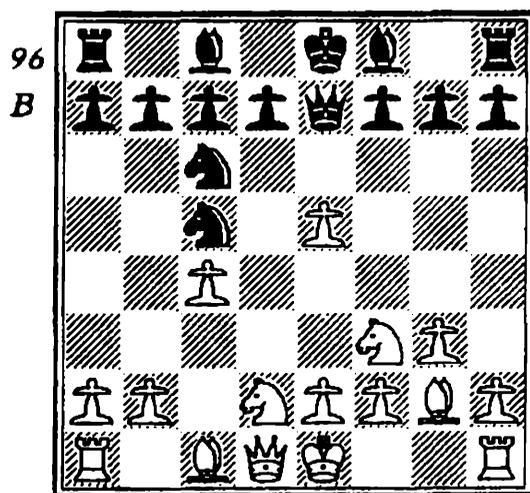
♖xd2, he would have maintained a plus.

c) 6 ... g6, and now:

c1) A game Taimanov - Mukhitdinov, USSR 1955, went 7 ♖b3 ♖e6 8 ♖d2 ♖g7 9 ♖c3 a5, and now with 10 ♖c2! White could have consolidated his advantage. However, Black can improve with 7 ... ♖xb3 8 ♖xb3 h6, followed by ... ♖g7, with a defensible position.

c2) For this reason, it is worth considering 7 ♖b1 ♖g7 8 ♖c3 0-0 (8 ... ♖xe5 is met by 9 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 10 ♖h6) 9 ♖g2 ♖xe5 10 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 11 ♖h6 ♖e8 12 0-0, and White's chances are to be preferred (authors' analysis).

d) 6 ... ♖e7 7 ♖g2 gives the following position (96):



From the diagram, tournament practice has seen:

d1) 7 ... g6, as in *Illustrative Game No. 18* (Alekhine - Tartakower).

d2) 7 ... g5 8 0-0 occur-

red in Eliskases - Pitcak, Moravska Ostrava 1933. Black now decided to go over to the attack with 8 ... g4 9 ♗h4 ♗xe5; there followed 10 b4 ♗a6 11 a3 d6 12 ♖c2 ♗g6 13 ♖b2 ♖g8 14 ♗f5 ♖g5 15 e4, with a clear advantage to White.

d3) Recapturing the pawn with 7 ... ♗xe5 is answered by 8 0-0 d6 9 b4. In a game Vidmar - Kostic, Yugoslavia 1947, there followed 9 ... ♗e6 10 ♖b2 f6 11 ♖b3 ♖f7 12 ♗h4 ♗g6 13 ♗f5 ♗e7 14 ♗e3, with an overwhelming advantage to White. The alternative retreat 9 ... ♗cd7 is a little better. Then, after 10 ♖b2 g6 11 ♗xe5 de 12 c5 ♖g7 13 ♗c4 0-0, White has two ways of proceeding: 14 c6 bc 15 ♖xc6 ♖b8 16 b5, as in van Scheltinga - Tartakower, Buenos Aires 1939, or 14 ♖c2 ♖b8 15 ♖ad1 ♖e8 16 ♖c3 ♗f8 17 ♖b2 f6 18 ♗a5!, as in Spotanski - Karnkowski, Poland 1956. In both cases White gained a clear plus.

To return to the main line (6 ... d6):

7 ed

We now consider two recaptures:

A211 7 ... ♖xd6

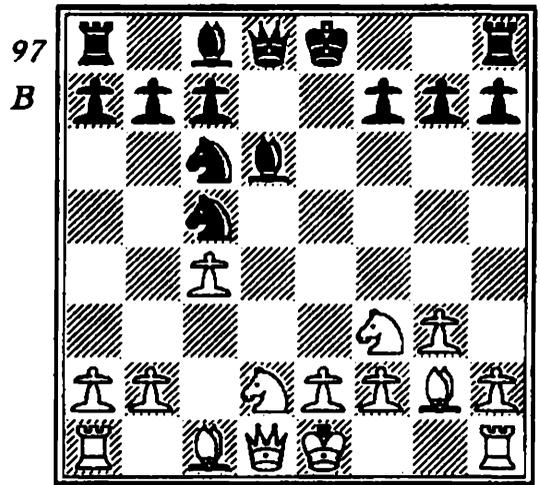
A212 7 ... ♖xd6

♖g2 (8 dc?! ♖xc7 9 ♖g2 0-0-0 is too risky for White) 8... ♖xd6 leads to A212.

A211

7 ... ♖xd6

8 ♖g2 (97)



8 ... 0-0

8 ... ♖g4!? is worth considering (ECO).

A game Koomen - Jung, Holland 1937, went 8 ... ♖f5 9 0-0 ♖e7 10 ♗h4 ♖g4 11 ♖f3, and now Black should have continued 11 ... ♖h3, with sufficient compensation for the pawn.

8 ... ♖f6 9 0-0 ♖e6 10 ♗b3 0-0 amounts to a transposition.

9 0-0 ♖f6

In Esposito - Flores, Mar del Plata 1951, Black played the weaker 9 ... ♖e8 10 ♗b3 ♗xb3 11 ♖xb3 ♖c5, and there followed 12 ♖g5 f6 13 ♖ad1 ♖e7 14 ♖f4 g5 15 ♖e3 ♖xe3 16 ♖xe3 ♖xe3 17 fe with the better chances for White.

The variation 7 ... ♖f5 8

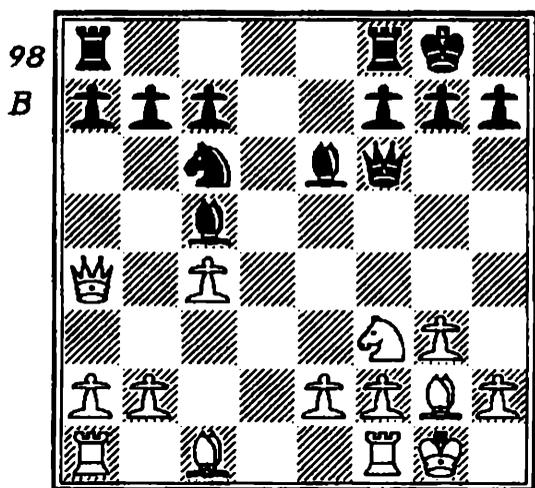
10 ♗b3 ♕e6

10 ... ♗xb3 11 ♖xb3 ♕c5 12 ♕d2 ♕f5 is inferior; in Pokorny - Weill, Munich 1936, White replied 13 ♕c3 ♖e7 14 e4 ♕xe4 15 ♖ae1, gaining a clear superiority.

11 ♗xc5 ♕xc5

12 ♖a4 (98)

If 12 ♖b3, then 12 ... ♗a5.



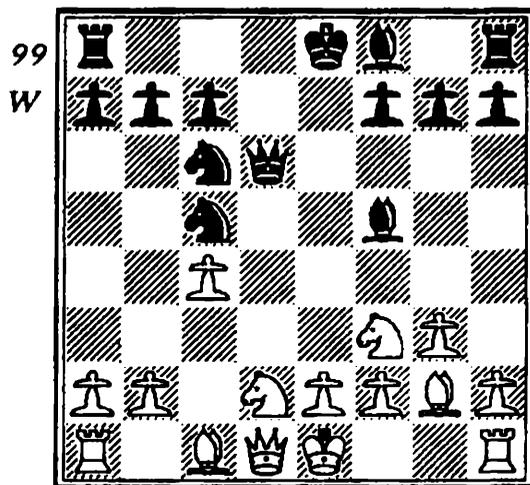
In this position Black retains good attacking possibilities. A game Barcza - Halic, Budapest 1937, proceeded: 12 ... ♕g4! 13 ♗g5 ♖ae8 (if 13 ... ♕xe2, then 14 ♗e4 with a good game for White) 14 ♗e4 ♖xe4! 15 ♕xe4 ♕xe2 16 ♕f4 ♖xb2! 17 ♕xc6 bc 18 ♖xc6 ♕xf2+ 19 ♖xf2 ♖xa1+ 20 ♖g2 ♕d3 21 ♖xc7 ♖d4! 22 ♖e5 ♕e4+ 23 ♖g1 ♖xc4 24 ♕e3 ♖d8 25 ♖f4 ♖d1+ 26 ♖f1 ♖xf1+ 27 ♖xf1 ♖xa2, and Black won.

A212

7 ... ♖xd6

In this line Black aims to castle queenside.

8 ♕g2 ♕f5 (99)



9 0-0

9 a3 is met by 9 ... ♖f6!, while if 9 ♗h4, then 9 ... ♕e6 10 0-0 0-0-0; in both cases Black has compensation for the pawn.

9 ... 0-0-0

In Najdorf - Rossetto, Buenos Aires 1941, Black temporised with 9 ... ♕e7?. White replied with 10 ♗b1! 0-0-0 (too late!) 11 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 12 ♗c3, retaining his extra pawn with a good position.

10 a3

In Gereben - Möhring, match Hungary - Holland 1949, White decided to return the pawn with 10 b4 ♗xb4 (after 10 ... ♖f6, the exchange sacrifice 11 bc ♖xa1 12 ♖a4 gives White distinct counterchances) 11 ♕b2, to which Black should simply have replied 11 ... ♗c6! with the better game.

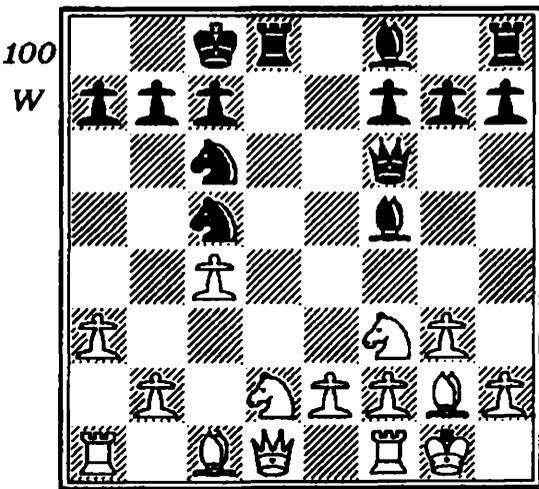
The continuation 10 b3 ♖f6! 11 ♕a3 ♗e4 12 ♕xf8 ♖hxf8 allows the black

pieces to become very active.

10 ... ♖f6 (100)

Preventing the advance b2 - b4, which could otherwise be fairly dangerous. For example, 10 ... ♕e7? 11 b4 ♗e4 12 ♖b3 ♗c3 13 ♖e1 ♗d4 14 ♗xd4 ♖xd4 15 ♖b2, and White keeps the pawn with a good position; Sajtar - Möhring, Czechoslovakia - Holland match 1949.

10 ... a5? does not help either. After 11 b4 ab 12 ab ♗xb4, White has two good continuations: 13 ♗g5 ♖b8 14 ♗xf7 ♖f6 15 ♗xd8 as in Troianescu - Stulik, Marianske Lazne 1948; or 13 ♖a8+ ♖d7 14 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 15 ♖b2, as in Golombek - Bisguier, Southsea 1950.



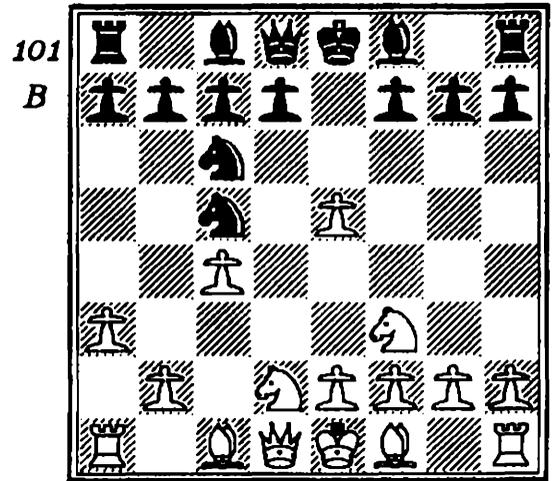
In List - Richter, Swinemünde 1932, White tried 11 ♗h4 ♕e6 12 ♕xc6 bc 13 ♖c2, and there followed 13 ... g5 14 b4 gh 15 ♖b2 ♖h6 with an irresistible attack for Black.

In the diagrammed posi-

tion, Korn recommends 11 ♖a2, when Black has to choose between repeating moves with 11 ... ♖b1 12 ♖a1 ♕f5, or continuing the attack with 11 ... ♗e4!?

A22

6 a3 (101)



6 ... ♖e7

Here 6 ... d6 is met by 7 b4 ♗e6 8 ♖b2, with advantage to White.

In the event of 6 ... a5, White replies 7 ♗b3! (after 7 b3, Black has either 7 ... g6 8 ♖b2 ♖g7 9 ♖c2 ♖e7 with a satisfactory game, or 7 ... ♖e7 transposing to chapter 5, note 'c2' after diagram 81), with good prospects. For example:

a) 7 ... ♗xb3 8 ♖xb3 h6 9 ♖c3, securely maintaining the pawn.

b) 7 ... a4 8 ♖g5! f6 9 ef gf 10 ♗xc5 ♕xc5 11 ♖h6, with advantage (authors' analysis).

c) 7 ... h6 8 ♖f4 ♗e6 (8 ... ♗xb3 is answered by 9

♗xb3 g6 10 ♖d1 ♗g7 11 ♖d5) 9 ♗g3 ♗c5 10 e3 d6 11 ed ♗f6 12 ♗xc5 ♗xc5 13 dc ♗xb2 14 ♗e5! ♗b3 15 ♗xg7, and White wins; Bogoljubow - Richter, Germany 1931.

d) 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♗xc5 ♗xc5 9 ♗g5 ♗e7 10 ♗f4 0-0 11 e3 f6 was played in Kottnauer - Seidl, 1937; and now with 12 ♗d3 or 12 ♗e2, White could have obtained the better chances.

e) 7 ... ♗e6 8 ♗d2 a4 9 ♗c1 d6 10 ♗c3 ♗d7 11 ♗d3 ♗a5 (11 ... ♗e7 followed by ... 0-0 and ... f7 - f6, as recommended by Minev, is a little better) 12 ♗d2 ♗c6 13 e3 de 14 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 15 ♗xe5, with a clear advantage; Hübner - Pedersen, Athens 1969.

Let us return to the main line (6 ... ♗e7).

7 e3

7 b4? is a mistake; in Rabar - Richter, Munich 1941, there followed 7 ... ♗xe5 8 e3 ♗cd3+ 9 ♗xd3 ♗xd3+ 10 ♗e2, and now with 10 ... ♗xc1+! 11 ♖xc1 d6 Black could have gained a clear plus.

In answer to 7 g3, Black can play 7 ... ♗xe5 8 ♗xe5 ♗xe5; or 7 ... g6 8 ♗g2 ♗g7 9 0-0 ♗xe5; or finally, 7 ... d6 8 b4 ♗xe5, with a sound position in all cases.

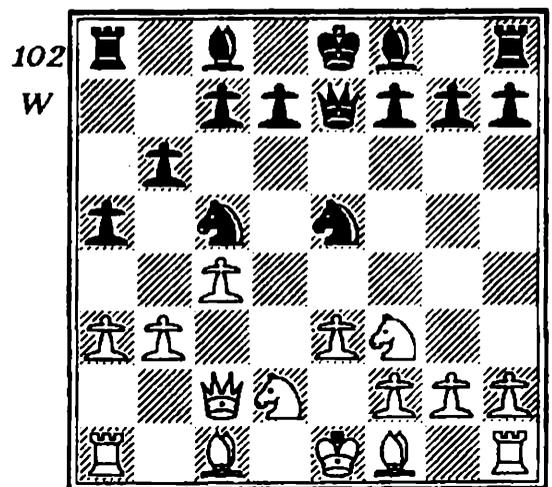
7 ... ♗xe5
8 ♗c2

Johannsson - Bisguier, Helsinki 1952, went 8 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 9 ♗f3 ♗f6 10 ♗c2 (if 10 ♗e2, then 10 ... b6 is good) 10 ... g6 (10 ... ♗g6 11 ♗c3 ♗e7 is simpler), and after 11 ♗d2 ♗e7 12 ♗c3 f6 13 b4 ♗e4 14 ♗b2 b6 15 h4 ♗b7, a double-edged position arose, with approximately equal chances.

8 ... a5

In Engels - Richter, Swinemünde 1933, Black played 8 ... g6, and there followed 9 b4! ♗g7 10 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 11 ♗b2 ♗f6 12 ♗e4! ♗g7 13 ♗c3 ♗e6 14 f4, with advantage to White. The text forestalls this possibility.

9 b3 b6 (102)

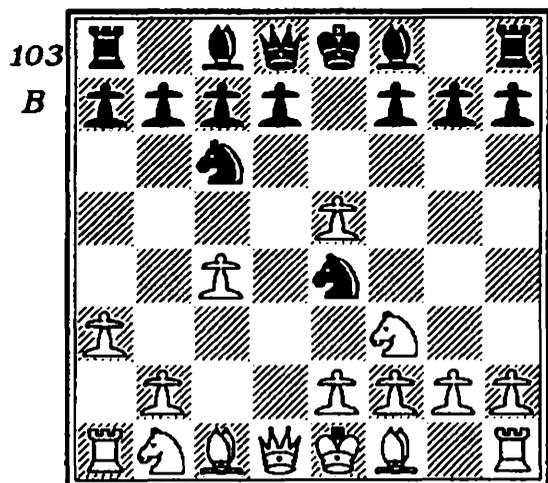


In the diagrammed position Black has his full share of the play. In a game Engels - Richter, Oeynhaus 1937, the continuation was 10 ♗b2 ♗xf3+ 11 gf ♗b7 (this move would be even more effective in answer to 11 ♗xf3) 12 ♗e2 f6 13 h4 ♗e6

14 h5 ♕d6 15 ♖g1 ♔e7, with sharp play and roughly equal chances.

B

5 a3 (103)



A good prophylactic move, preventing Black's bishop from intruding on b4.

5 ... d6

There is nothing better, since on 5 ... ♔e7 there follows 6 ♔c2 ♖c5 7 b4 ♖e6 8 ♕b2, while 5 ... a5, which occurred in Hershman - Czerniak, Buenos Aires 1940, was met by 6 b3! d6 7 ♕b2 ♕e7 8 ♖bd2 (if 8 ed, then 8 ... ♕f6! is unpleasant) 8 ... ♖xd2 9 ♔xd2 de 10 ♖xe5, and White retained the extra pawn with a good position.

We shall now examine two possibilities in detail:

B1 6 ed

B2 6 ♔c2

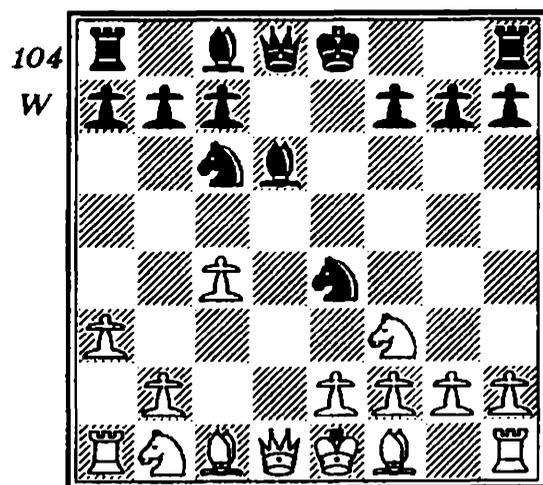
After 6 ♔d5 ♖c5, Black

obtains adequate counter-chances. A game Titenko - Roshal, Tyumen 1962, continued: 7 ♕g5 f6 8 ef gf 9 ♕f4 ♕e6 10 ♔d1 ♕xc4 11 ♖bd2 ♕a6 12 b4 ♖e6 13 ♕g3 ♔e7 14 ♔a4 ♕d3!, and after 15 ♖d1? (better 15 e3 ♕xf1 16 ♖xf1) 15 ... ♕g6 16 e3 ♕g7 17 ♖c1 0-0, Black acquired an obvious plus.

B1

6 ed ♕xd6 (104)

This continuation suits Black very well.



7 ♖bd2

The threat was 7 ... ♖xf2 8 ♔xf2 ♕g3+, winning the queen. In Schlage - Richter, Berlin 1930, White played 7 e3; there followed 7 ... ♕g4 (7 ... ♕f5 8 ♖bd2 would transpose to the main line) 8 ♕e2 ♔f6 9 h3 0-0-0! 10 hg ♕g3 11 fg ♖xd1+ 12 ♕xd1 ♖e5 13 0-0 ♖xg3, and White had inadequate compensation for the queen.

7 ... ♕f5

8 e3

After 8 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 9 ♖g5 (for 9 e3 ♗e7!, see the note to Black's 8th move in the main line) 9 ... f6 10 ♖e3 ♗e7, Black similarly has good prospects. In Müller - Keller, Vienna 1939, the continuation was 11 ♗a4 0-0-0 12 ♗d2 ♖g6 13 g3 ♖c5 14 ♖h3+ ♗b8 15 ♖xc5 ♗xc5, with dangerous threats.

8 ... ♗f6

At this point 8 ... ♗e7! is perhaps simpler. In Clarke - Carleton, Birmingham 1972, the continuation was 9 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 10 ♖d2 (if 10 ♖d3, then 10 ... 0-0-0) 10 ... 0-0-0 11 ♖e2 g5 12 h3 h5 13 ♗b3 g4 14 hg hg 15 ♖xh8 ♖xh8 16 ♗g1 ♖h1 17 0-0-0 ♗h4 18 g3 ♖xg3! and Black soon won.

9 ♗xe4

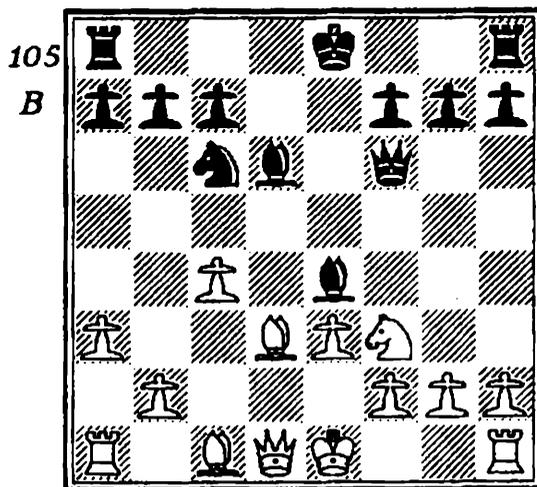
In the event of 9 ♖e2 0-0-0, Black's attack proceeds without hindrance, for example:

a) 10 0-0 ♗h6 11 ♗e1 (there is nothing better, since after 11 h3 g5, or 11 g3 ♗h3 with ... h7 - h5 - h4 to follow, the situation is hopeless for White) 11 ... ♖he8 12 ♗b3 (or 12 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 13 g3 ♗h3) 12 ... ♖g4 13 g3 ♗h3 14 ♗h4 ♖e6! 15 f3 ♗xg3! 16 hg ♖xg3 17 ♖f2 ♗xh4, and Black wins; Soos - Morell, Berne 1974.

b) 10 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 11 ♗a4 ♖he8 12 0-0 g5 13 ♗e1 ♗b8

14 f3 ♗e5 15 g3 ♖f5, and Black maintains dangerous threats; Regedzinski - Richter, Hohenhausen 1940.

9 ... ♖xe4
10 ♖d3 (105)

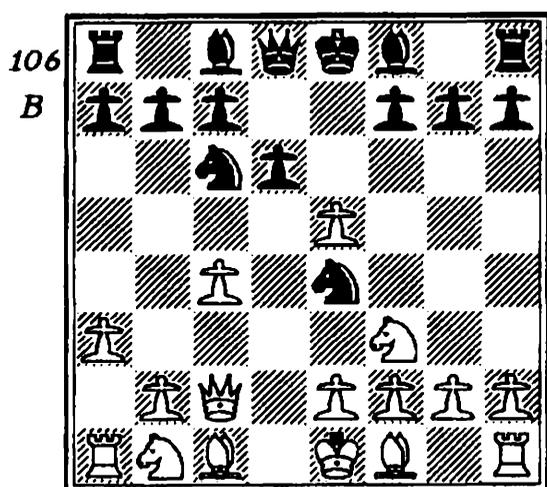


With his queen on e7 Black would continue 10 ... 0-0-0, maintaining a powerful attack, but now this is impossible.

The game Dlugy - Aristizabal, Montpellier 1985, went 10 ... ♖g6 11 ♗c2 0-0-0 (another playable line is 11 ... ♖xd3 13 ♗xd3 0-0-0 13 ♗c2 ♖he8 14 ♖d2 ♗e5 15 ♗xe5 ♖xe5) 12 ♖xg6 hg 13 ♖d2 ♗e5 14 ♗xe5 ♖xe5 15 f4?! ♖xd2? 16 ♗xd2!, and Black remained the exchange down. He could however have improved with 15 ... ♖xb2! 16 ♖a2 (16 ♖b1 ♖xa3 17 ♗b3 ♗c6 is thoroughly bad for White) 16 ... ♗c6! 17 0-0 (the bishop is invulnerable in view of ... ♗xg2) 17 ... ♖f6, retaining a positional advantage (authors' analysis).

B2

6 ♖c2 (106)



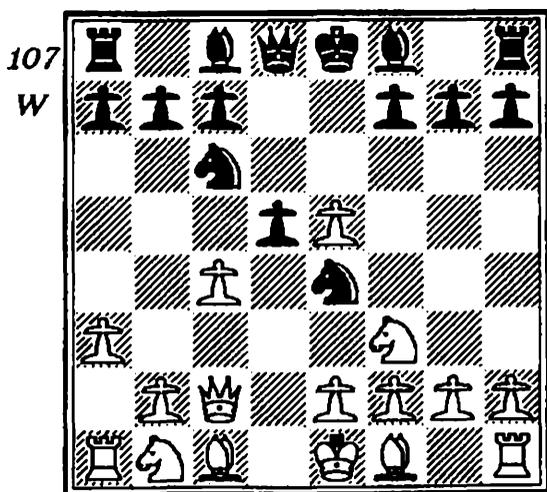
This move is definitely the strongest.

6 ... ♗c5

The only move enabling Black to organise resistance.

A game Reshevsky - Bisguier, New York 1954/5, went 6 ... ♗f5 7 ♗c3 ♗xf2 (7 ... ♗g3 8 e4 ♗xh1 9 ef de 10 ♗e3 is no better) 8 ♖xf5 ♗xh1, and there followed 9 e6 fe 10 ♖xe6+ ♖e7 11 ♖d5 h6 12 g3, with a clear plus for White.

6 ... d5 has also been played, leading to the position below (107):



Now White has:

a) 7 cd ♖xd5 8 ♗c3 ♗xc3 9 ♖xc3 ♗g4 10 ♗f4 0-0-0, and Black retains chances of winning back the gambit pawn with equality.

b) 7 ♗c3 ♗xc3 8 ♖xc3 ♗e7 9 ♗f4 d4 (the position resembles the Albin counter-gambit) 10 ♖b3 0-0 11 0-0-0?! (11 ♗d1 was more circumspect) 11 ... ♗f5! 12 e3 ♗a5 13 ♖a4 c5 14 ♗d3 b5! 15 cb ♗e6! 16 b4 ♗b3+ 17 ♖b2 a6, and Black developed a strong attack; Hrushch - Stremkowski, corr. 1980/3.

c) 7 e3! ♗g4 (if 7 ... ♗f5, then 8 ♗d3) 8 cd ♖xd5 9 ♗c4 ♖a5+ 10 b4 ♗xb4+ 11 ab ♖xa1 12 ♖xe4 ♗h5 13 e6 ♗g6 14 ef+ ♖f8 15 ♖f4 ♖xb1 16 0-0 ♖e4 17 b5! ♖xf4 18 ef ♗xf7 (18 ... ♗e7 is answered by 19 ♗g5! ♗f5 20 ♗a3 ♗d8 21 ♗e1 ♗d7 22 ♗e6+) 19 ♗xf7 ♖xf7 20 bc, with a won position for White; Bisguier - Ljubojevic, Malaga 1971.

7 b4 ♗e6

7 ... ♗d7 is met by 8 ed ♗xd6 9 ♖e4+.

8 ♗b2 de

9 e3

After 9 ♗xe5 ♗ed4, or 9 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 10 ♗xe5 g6!, Black has good counterplay for the pawn.

9 ... f6

10 ♗d3 g6

11 ♗c3

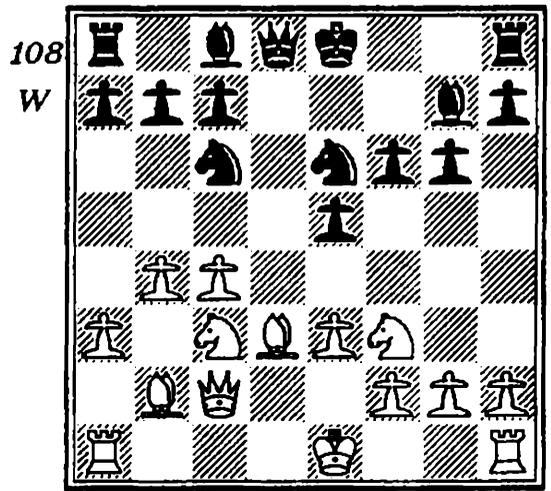
The sacrifice 11 ♗xg6+ hg

110 3 ... ♘e4 4 ♘f3 ♘c6

12 ♙xg6+ ♖e7 13 ♘c3 is un-
 sound on account of 13 ...
 ♖h6! 14 ♘d5+ ♙xd5 15 ♙xh6
 ♙d3, followed by ... ♙c2,
 and Black retains a material
 advantage.

11 ... ♙g7 (108)

A correspondence game
 Nyman - Schmidt, 1979, con-
 tinued 12 ♖d1 ♙e7 13 ♘d5
 ♙f7 14 c5 O-O 15 ♙c4, and
 after 15 ... ♖h8 16 h4 h6 17
 b5 e4 18 bc bc 19 ♘f4 ef 20
 ♘xg6+ White won. How-
 ever, by playing 15 ... ♘cd8!
 16 h4 c6 17 ♘c3 ♙e7 18 ♘e4



♘f7, followed by ... ♖d8,
 Black would have retained
 chances of gradually neut-
 ralisng White's strong
 pressure.

Illustrative Games

Game No. 1
Helmar - Krejčík
Vienna 1917

1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♘g4
 4 f4

In our day, this sort of anti-positional thrust could only occur in (say) a five-minute game. But in the year of its first appearance, the theory of the Budapest Gambit was in a wholly undeveloped state.

4 ... ♙c5
 5 ♘h3 ♘xh2?!

Here, as Schlechter has shown, Black should sacrifice some pawns rather than a piece: 5 ... d6! 6 ed 0-0 7 dc (7 e4 cd!) 7 ... ♙xc7 8 ♘c3 ♙e6. At move 8, *ECO's* recommendation is just as good: 8 ... ♙b4 9 ♙b3 ♘c6 10 e3 ♙e8. The line chosen by Krejčík, though pretty, is excessively hazardous, and we shall see that it could have been refuted.

6 ♙xh2 ♙h4+

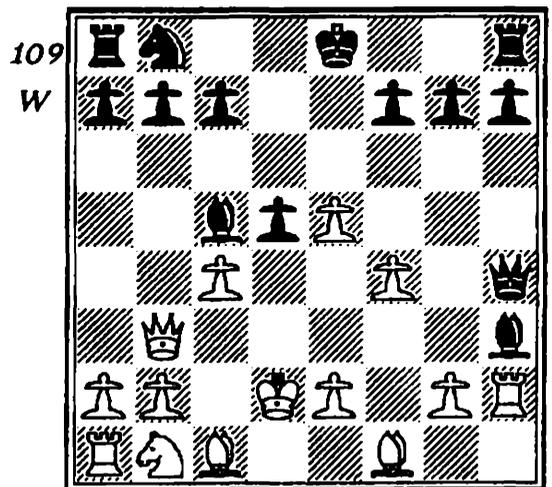
7 ♙d2

A controversial position. In Tartakower's opinion, White can beat off the attack and keep his extra material by playing 7 g3 ♙xg3+ 8 ♙f2 d6 9 ♙d3, but this is doubtful in view of 9 ... ♙h4 10 f5 g6, when the position remains unclear.

7 ... d5

Bringing his other bishop into the attack. In the first place the threat is 8 ... ♙g3 followed by ... ♙e3+; and if 8 ♙e1, then 8 ... ♙e3+ at once.

8 ♙b3 ♙xh3 (109)



9 ♙xh3?

The decisive error! After 9 g3! ♙d8 10 ♙b5+ c6 11 ♙xc5 ♙xf1 12 ♙e1 dc 13 ♘c3,

Black would have no compensation for the material lost. After the text move, Krejčík conducts the game to victory with assurance.

9 ... ♖xf4+
10 ♖c2

If 10 e3 (recommended by some annotators), Black can continue the attack with 10 ... ♖xf1 11 ♖c8+ ♕e7 12 ♖xh8 ♖xe3+ 13 ♖xe3 ♖xc1+.

10 ... ♖xf1
11 ♖c8+ ♕e7
12 ♖xh8 ♖xe2+
13 ♖d2

If 13 ♖c3, then 13 ... d4+ and mates; or if 13 ♖d2, then 13 ... ♖c6, followed by 14 ... ♖d4+ or 14 ... ♖b4+, is decisive.

13 ... ♖c6!
14 ♖xa8

14 ♖xh7 makes no difference.

14 ... ♖b4+

14 ... ♖d4+ mates more quickly.

15 ♖b3 ♖xc4+
16 ♖a4 b5+
17 ♖a5 ♖b6 mate.

Game No. 2

Capablanca - Tartakower Kissingen 1929

Notes by Nimzowitsch (N), and Euwe and Prins (E/P)

1 d4 ♖f6
2 c4 e5

(N:) Let us try to grasp the idea of this opening. The pawn sacrifice immediately turns the closed position into an open one, resulting in a kind of re-valuation: the position of the pawn on c4, which would make sense in a closed game, will now turn out to be pointless and even weakening.

Therefore it would seem that White ought to play in such a way that the pawn on c4 does retain some significance.

3 de ♖g4
4 e4

(N:) The most logical continuation (indicated by Bernstein) is 4 ♖f3 ♖c6 5 ♖f4 ♖b4+ 6 ♖bd2 ♖e7 7 a3 ♖xd2+ 8 ♖xd2 ♖gxe5 9 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 10 e3, and White's c-pawn hinders the advance of the opponent's d-pawn. The following variation also seems to us to be quite effective: 4 ♖f3 ♖c6 5 e3, followed by ♖e2, 0-0, and occupation of the d5 point (♖b1 - c3 - d5). In this line too, the white c-pawn retains part of its original significance.

4 ... d6

(N:) Why such impetuosity? Of course Black's boldness is worthy of praise (a pawn sacrifice against Capablanca!), and

yet 4 ... ♖xe5 would have given him a perfectly solid game, for example: 5 f4 ♖ec6! 6 ♖f3 ♙c5 7 ♖c3 d6, and the position of the pawns on c4, e4, and f4 appears lacking in organic co-ordination when compared with the two variations in our last note.

5 ed ♙xd6

(N:) Now the pawn on c4 has indeed lost all its meaning, but this pleasure has been bought for the high price of a whole pawn.

6 ♙e2 f5
7 ef ♗e7

(N:) With his seventh move Black deliberately sacrifices a piece, and his repeated boldness once again arouses our admiration; although from another point of view we have to state that the sacrifice is unsound, and that Capa ought to have accepted it.

8 ♖f3?

(E/P:) The general view is that White should not accept the piece sacrifice (8 c5 ♙xc5 9 ♗a4+ ♖c6 10 ♗xg4 ♖d4 - Tartakower).

(N:) Oh, Capablanca! Where is your analytical precision? As I shall show, 8 c5 would have won easily.

(Authors' note: to avoid repetition, we here omit Nimzowitsch's variations given in chapter 2).

8 ... ♙xf5

9 ♙g5 ♖f6

(E/P:) Tartakower considers that 9 ... ♗f7 was strongest (10 c5 ♙e7 11 h3 ♖f6 12 ♖e5 ♗e6).

(N:) 9 ... ♗f7 is bad on account of 10 c5 ♙e7 11 ♙xe7 ♗xe7 12 ♗d5 (12 ... ♙e4? 13 ♗h5+).

10 ♖c3 ♖c6

11 ♖d5 ♗f7

12 0-0 0-0-0

(E/P:) This looks more attractive than 12 ... 0-0 - which is a recommendation of Tartakower himself and should not be ignored, if only because it involves much less risk than the move actually played.

(N:) Kingside castling deserves preference, since after 12 ... 0-0-0 Black's a-pawn is inadequately defended, and the cohesion of his whole structure suffers as a result. After all, it is this cohesion - this solidarity combined with dark-squared pressure (♙d6!) - that constitutes Black's chief compensation for the sacrificed pawn. After 12 ... 0-0 it cannot be denied that Black has good equalising chances, for example: 13 ♖xf6+ gf 14 ♙h6 ♖fe8 15 ♙d3 ♙g4 16 c5! ♙xh2+, etc. (But not 16 ... ♙xc5 on account of 17 ♗c2, although even then White achieves

nothing remarkable.)

13 ♖d4

(E/P:) The threat was ... ♕e7!. In the event of 13 ♜a4 ♞de8, Black would have substantial counterchances.

(N:) This unexpected centralisation makes sense only because of the concealed threat against a7 (♜d1xd4xa7). If Black had castled short, this blow could easily have been parried, thus: 12 ... 0-0 (instead of 12 ... 0-0-0) 13 ♖d4 ♖xd4 14 ♜xd4 ♗e4 (threatening ... ♕c5), when chances of equalising would be available to Black.

13 ... ♖xd4

(E/P:) This is probably stronger than the alternative 13 ... ♕d7.

14 ♜xd4 c6!

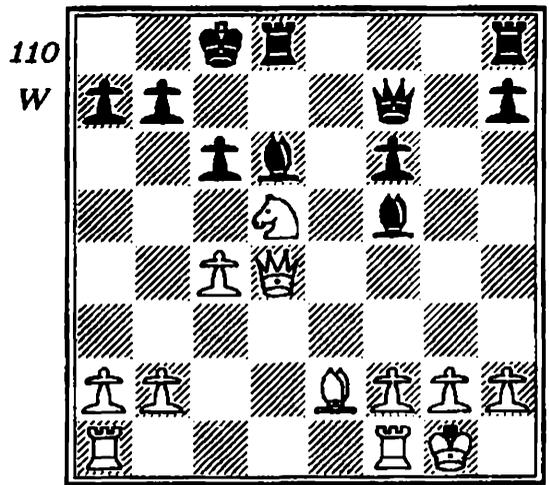
(Euwe and Prins give this move a question mark.)

(E/P:) However risky 14 ... c5 may have looked, there was no other way; after 15 ♜h4 ♖xd5 16 cd (16 ♕xd8? ♗f4) 16 ... ♞de8 17 ♕f3 h6 18 ♕e3 ♝b8, Black is still fighting. Now, however, he is lost.

(N:) Another line giving chances of salvation was 14 ... ♖xd5 15 cd (15 ♕xd8? ♗f4) 15 ... ♞de8 16 ♕f3! (16 ♕g4 is bad on account of 16 ... ♕xg4 17 ♜xg4+ ♝b8 18 ♞ad1 ♞e5, winning the pawn back) 16... ♝b8. In place of

this last move, Black could also 'try his luck' with 16 ... ♜g6. If then 17 ♕e3 (the correct move, however, is 17 ♕f4, and if 17 ... ♕e4, then 18 ♕xd6 ♕xf3 19 ♕g3 and White wins), Black has 17 ... ♕e4! 18 ♕xe4 ♞xe4 19 ♜xa7 ♞g4! 20 g3 ♕xg3 21 fg ♞xg3+, and White cannot win (22 ♝f2 ♞f8+ 23 ♝e1 ♞xe3+, with ... ♞e8 to follow; or 23 ♝e2 ♜c2+ 24 ♝e1 ♞xf1+ 25 ♝xf1 ♜g2+ 26 ♝e1 ♜h1+ 27 ♝e2 ♞g2+ 28 ♕f2 ♜xa1, etc.). Quite an amusing variation.

15 ♕xf6 gf (110)



16 ♜xf6?

(E/P:) It is almost unbelievable that both players failed to analyse 16 ♜xa7 and perceive that Black's position would then be hopeless.

Let us see: 16 ... cd 17 cd (threatening ♕b5) 17 ... ♜xd5 (17 ... ♝d7 18 ♞fe1 ♜xd5 19 ♕f3 ♜b5 20 ♕xb7, and wins; or 17 ... ♕b8 18 ♞ac1+ ♝d7 19 ♜e3! ♞c8 20

Qb5+ Qd8 21 ♖b6+ Qc7 22 ♜xc7, again winning) 18 ♜fd1 ♖e5 (to prevent Qb5) 19 ♞ac1+ Qd7 20 ♖xb7+ Qe8 21 Qh5+, and White wins.

It is possible that Capablanca thought 16 ♖xa7 would be answered by 16 ... ♞hg8, and therefore wanted to increase his material advantage by safer means. But this decision was based on a false assumption, as we shall see from the next note.

16 ... ♖xf6

(N:) 16 ... ♖d7 would give Black nothing, for example: 17 Qe3 ♞df8 18 ♖h4, and Black's 'attack' quickly peters out.

(E/P:) With 16 ... ♖g6!, pointed out by Euwe, Black could force a draw: 17 ♖xg6 hg, or 17 c5 Qxc5 18 ♖c3 Qe4; or 17 Qe7+? Qxe7 18 ♖xe7 ♞he8.

17 Qxf6 Qe5

18 Qg4

(N:) This has all been well calculated by Capa.

18 ... Qxf6

(E/P:) Black could retain the better drawing chances with 18 ... Qxg4 19 Qxg4 Qxb2 20 ♞ad1 Qd4, after which White would have to surmount some obstacles (h2 - h3, Qh1) before starting active operations (f2 - f4).

(N:) After the end of the

game, some masters pointed out that Black has 18 ... Qxg4 19 Qxg4 Qxb2 20 ♞ad1 Qd4, when White will have some difficulty in dealing with the centralised bishop. But however much we value centralisation as such, in the present case we consider this attempt inadequate, for the bishop's action can be curbed and the material advantage will tell. For example, 21 ♞d2! h5 22 ♜fd1 c5 23 Qe3; or 21 ... ♞he8 22 ♜fd1 (22 h3, followed by 23 Qh2 and Qf3, is quite good too) 22 ... h5 23 Qh6, followed by Qf5, and White wins without undue trouble.

The move played gives more realistic chances - in particular, opposite bishops.

19 . Qxf5+ Qc7

(E/P:) If he wants, Black can save the second pawn, but not the game: 19 ... Qb8 20 ♞ad1 ♞xd1 21 ♞xd1 Qxb2 22 ♞d7 h6 (Tartakower).

20 ♞ad1 Qxb2

(E/P:) Black should of course refrain from capturing on b2, and play 20 ... h6 (Tartakower).

21 ♞xd8 ♞xd8

(E/P:) Or 21 ... Qxd8 22 ♞d1+ Qc7 23 ♞d7+ Qb6 24 c5+ Qa6 25 Qd3+ b5 26 ♞c7, etc.

22 Qxh7 ♞d4

(N:) Winning a pawn, but at the cost of much valuable time.

22 ... ♖d2 seems more natural to us, but the immediate 22 ... b5 also gives definite chances, for example: 23 cb c5 24 g3 c4 25 h4 c3 26 f4 ♖d2 27 ♗f2? c2! 28 ♕xc2 ♕d4, and Black wins; or 25 f4! (instead of 25 h4) 25 ... ♖d2 26 f5 ♖d8, and White appears to have no means of winning. After 22 ... b5 23 cb c5 White may also push the f-pawn at once, but in this case too Black is not without resources, for instance: 24 f4 (instead of 24 g3) 24 ... c4 25 f5 ♖d2 26 g3 (if 26 f6?, then 26 ... ♕d4+ and ... ♕xf6) 26 ... ♖d8 etc.

So it would seem that the immediate exploitation of Black's pawn majority would have led to a draw!

(E/P:) White's difficulties in attaining the win would not have been insurmountable after 22 ... ♖d2 either: 23 h4 b5 24 cb c5 25 ♕g8 ♖d4 26 ♖b1, etc.

Black is likewise unsuccessful with the immediate 22 ... b5 23 cb c5 24 g3 c4 25 ♖e1, followed by ♖f1 and ♖e2.

23 g3 ♖xc4

24 h4 b5

(E/P:) Black also succumbs after 24 ... ♖c1 25

♖xc1 ♕xc1 26 f4, followed by ♕c2, h4 - h5 - h6 - h7, ♖g1 - f2 - f3, etc.

25 ♖g2 a5

26 h5

(N:) Threatening h6, and then ♕g8 and h7, turning the flexible bishop on b2 into an overburdened camel.

26 ... ♕g7

27 f4

(N:) Now White wins without difficulty.

27 ... ♕h6

(E/P:) To stop g3 - g4.

28 ♖e1 ♖a4

29 ♕g8 ♖d4

30 ♖e7+ ♖d7

31 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7

32 ♖f3 c5

33 g4 c4

34 g5 ♕f8

35 h6 a4

36 f5 ♖c6

37 h7 ♕g7

38 f6 c3

39 ♖e2 ♕h8

40 f7 1-0

Game No. 3

Gilg - Vajda

Kecskemet 1927

1 d4 ♖f6

2 c4 e5

3 de ♖g4

4 e4 ♖xe5

5 f4 ♖ec6

6 a3 a5

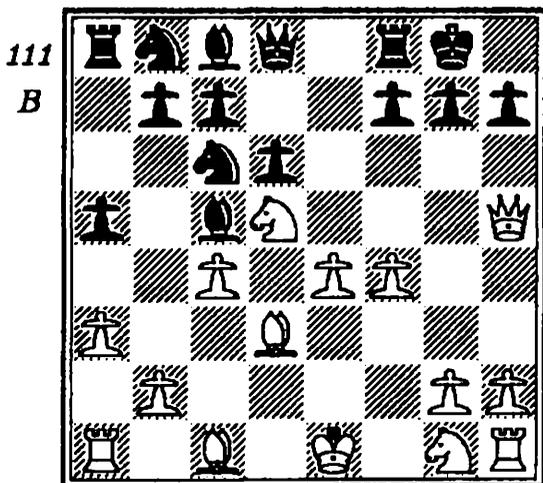
7 ♖c3

At this point we should

say a word about the psychological background to this game. The point is that Alekhine had played the same line as White against Gilg in the Semmering tournament a year earlier. Alekhine won that game, and Gilg resolved to copy his play at the first convenient opportunity. But what is permitted to Jupiter is not salutary to mortals. Here is what resulted:

- 7 ... ♞c5
- 8 ♘d5 0-0
- 9 ♞d3 d6
- 10 ♚h5 (111)

All as played by Alekhine. Afterwards Tartakower suggested 10 ♞e3 instead, leading to a sharp and approximately equal struggle.



- 10 ... ♘d4!

An unpleasant surprise! It turns out that Vajda, a connoisseur of the Budapest Gambit, had not been taken unawares, but had a striking innovation of his

own prepared for his opponent.

Gilg himself had played the weaker 10 ... ♘d7? 11 ♘f3 h6, and now the line recommended by Alekhine as strongest is 12 b4! ab 13 ♞b2 ba 14 ♞c3, with a formidable initiative.

- 11 e5

Annotating the game for the tournament book, Geza Maroczy remarked: "White is overreaching himself. His king's pawn is left weak and will fall, while White fails to obtain an attack. He should have played 11 ♘f3, but even then Black's game would be preferable."

- 11 ... g6
- 12 ♚h6 de
- 13 fe ♞e8!
- 14 ♚f4

White has to sound the retreat, since 14 ♞f4 is met by 14 ... c6 15 ♘e3 ♞f8 16 ♚g5 ♚xg5 17 ♞xg5 ♞xe5, with a won position for Black.

- 14 ... ♘d7
- 15 ♞e3 ♘e6!

This is more reliable than 15 ... ♘xe5, which would lead to unnecessary complications after 16 0-0-0. Now White is forced to withdraw on all parts of the front.

- 16 ♚g3 c6
- 17 ♘c3 ♘xe5

- 18 ♖xe5 ♘f4!
 Beautiful!
 19 ♖xf4 ♙xe3
 20 ♖f1 ♙xg1+
 21 ♜d2 ♙d4
 22 ♖d1?

Now White loses within a few moves. 22 ♜c2 was better, but even so Black would clearly have a won game, with the open centre, an extra pawn and the advantage of the bishop pair.

- 22 ... ♙g4
 23 ♖e1 ♖xe1
 24 ♖xe1 ♙f5

The point, of course, is 25 ♙xf5 ♙f2+.

- 25 ♖g3 ♙xd3
 26 ♖xd3 ♖g5+
 0-1

Maroczy's final note reads: "27 ♜e2 or 27 ♜c2 would be met by 27 ... ♖xg2+ winning a rook, while if 27 ♜d1, Black has 27 ... ♖d8. A Hungarian rhapsody!"

Game No. 4
Rudakovsky - Ratner
Moscow 1945

- 1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♘g4
 4 e4 ♘xe5
 5 f4 ♘ec6
 6 ♙e3 ♘a6

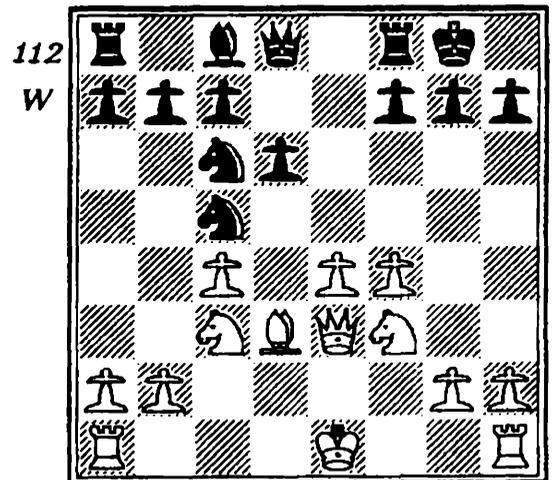
As indicated in chapter 2, the usual continuations here are 6 ... ♙b4+ 7 ♘c3

♖h4+, and 7 ... ♖e7. But the text move too is perfectly playable. Black plans to bring his bishop to c5 despite White's attempt to prevent it.

- 7 ♘f3 ♙c5
 8 ♖d2

After 8 ♙xc5 ♘xc5 9 ♘c3 0-0 10 ♙d3 d6, Black has no worries at all.

- 8 ... d6
 9 ♘c3 0-0
 10 ♙d3 ♙xe3
 11 ♖xe3 ♘c5 (112)



- 12 ♙c2

A move of doubtful merit, allowing Black to activate his game. White should have played 12 0-0-0 and after 12 ... ♘b4 (taking on d3 is disadvantageous) 13 ♙b1, the position is about equal.

- 12 ... ♘b4
 13 0-0-0?

Right now this move is wholly inappropriate. It allows Black to carry out the exchange in favourable circumstances and prepare

a queenside offensive. 13
 ♖b1 was relatively best.

13 ... ♗xc2
 14 ♔xc2 ♖e8
 15 ♖he1 ♙d7
 16 e5 b6!

The point! Black aims to bring his queen via c8 and a6 into the attack on the king.

17 ♔c1 de
 18 fe ♗c8
 19 ♗g5 h6
 20 ♗g3 ♗a6
 21 ♖d4 ♙f5!

Demonstrating his complete mastery of the light squares. White is now defenceless.

22 ♗d2

If 22 ♖ed1, then 22 ... ♗xa2!, while on 22 ♗h4 Black has the decisive 22 ... ♗b3+ 23 ab ♗a1+ 24 ♔d2 ♗xb2+.

22 ... ♖ad8
 23 ♖xd8 ♖xd8
 24 ♖f1 ♙g6
 25 ♗d5 ♗xa2
 0-1

Game No. 5
Alekhine - Seitz
Hastings 1925/6
 Notes by Alekhine

1 d4 ♗f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♗g4
 4 e4 ♗xe5
 5 f4 ♗ec6
 6 ♙e3 ♙b4+

7 ♗c3!

Much stronger than 7 ♗d2, for with the knight threatening to jump to d5, Black will sooner or later be forced to exchange his important dark-squared bishop for it. The doubling of the c-pawns in these circumstances is not something White should fear.

7 ... ♗e7
 8 ♙d3 f5?

(Authors' note: this obvious mistake is passed over in silence in Alekhine's commentary. As we show in chapter 2, Black has a satisfactory game after 8 ... ♗xc3+ 9 bc ♗a6.)

9 ♗h5+!

This forces a major weakening of Black's kingside.

9 ... g6
 10 ♗f3 ♙xc3+

Otherwise White will play ♗ge2.

11 bc fe?

This exchange, which furthers White's plan, must be considered the decisive error. 11 ... d6 was essential, though White would still have much the better game after 12 ♗e2 and 0-0.

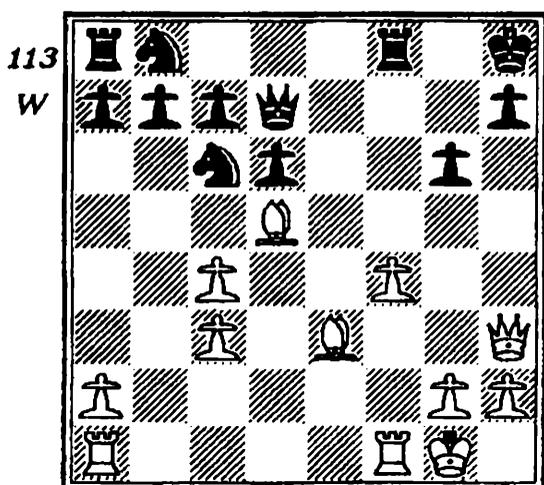
12 ♙xe4 0-0
 13 ♙d5+ ♔h8

Black would have quite a good game if his pawn were on g7. But now his unenviable position collapses in

a few moves.

14 ♖h3 d6
15 0-0 ♙xh3
16 ♚xh3 ♚d7 (113)

If 16 ... ♘d7, then 17 ♖ae1!
♙g7 18 f5 g5 19 ♖b1! ♖ab8
20 f6! ♘xf6 21 ♙xc6 bc 22
♖xb8 ♖xb8 23 ♚e6, and
White wins.



17 f5! gf

If 17 ... ♖xf5, then 18 g4
♖xf1+ 19 ♖xf1.

18 ♖ab1!

Against this there is no
defence. If 18 ... b6, White
has 19 ♖bel with the un-
answerable threat of 20
♙h6 followed by ♖xf5;
while 18 ... ♘a6 is answered
by 19 ♙xc6 and ♙d4+, with
mate in a few moves.

18 ... f4
19 ♙xf4 ♚xh3
20 ♙e5+ 1-0

White comes out a whole
rook up, thanks to the pin
that arises after 20 ... de 21
♖xf8+ ♚g7 22 ♖g8+ and 23
gh.

Game No. 6

Alekhine - Rabinovich
Baden-Baden 1925
Notes by Alekhine

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e5
3 de ♘g4
4 e4 ♘xe5
5 f4 ♘g6

5 ... ♘ec6 is acknow-
ledged as strongest.

6 ♘f3!

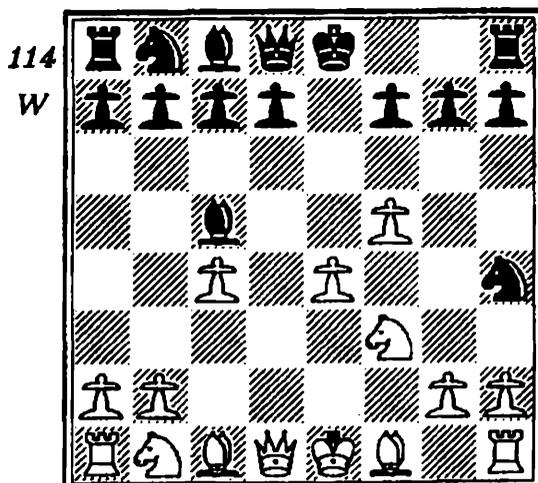
White shouldn't be afraid
of 6 ... ♙c5.

6 ... ♙c5

6 ... ♘c6 was relatively
better, so as to secure e5
for the king's knight in the
event of f4 - f5. White's
best reply would be 7 ♙e3.

7 f5! ♘h4? (114)

The decisive mistake. Of
course, 7 ... ♘e5 8 ♘xe5
♙h4+ 9 g3 ♚xe4+ 10 ♚e2
would be bad for Black, but
7 ... ♘e7 was essential.
Even then, White would
preserve his advantage with
8 ♘c3.



8 ♘g5!

The winning move. White threatens 9 ♖h5 winning the knight, and to defend against this Black is forced into a drastic weakening of his position.

8 ... ♖e7

9 ♖g4 f6

Again the only move.

10 ♖h5+!

Significantly stronger than 10 ♖xh4, as Black would then acquire some counterplay with 10 ... fg 11 ♕xg5 ♖e5, followed by ... 0-0.

10 ... g6

11 ♖xh4 fg

12 ♕xg5 ♖f7

13 ♕e2

Now that White has an extra pawn with a superb position, he only needs to complete his development before conducting the decisive attack against the black king.

13 ... 0-0

14 ♖f1 ♖c6

15 ♖c3 ♖d4

16 fg ♖xg6

17 ♖xf8+ ♕xf8

18 ♕h5 ♖b6

Setting a little trap: 19 ♖f2? ♖c2+.

19 0-0-0 ♕g7

20 ♖f1 ♖e6

21 ♕f7+

But not 21 ♕f6 ♖e3+ 22 ♖c2 ♕xf6 and ... ♖d4+.

21 ... ♖h8

22 ♕xe6 ♖xe6

If 22 ... de, then 23 ♕h6.

23 ♕f6! 1-0

Game No. 7

Almeida - Rossiter
World Cadet Ch. 1984

1 d4 ♖f6

2 c4 e5

3 de ♖g4

4 ♕f4 g5

The fact that this dubious variation crops up now and again in modern tournament practice shows that players underestimate, or are ignorant of, the positive aspects of the main line 4 ... ♖c6 5 ♖f3 ♕b4+.

5 ♕g3

As we know, White's best line is the retreat 5 ♕d2. For the next few moves, both players follow the recommendations of theory.

5 ... ♕g7

6 ♖f3 ♖c6

7 ♖c3 ♖gxe5

8 ♖xe5 ♖xe5

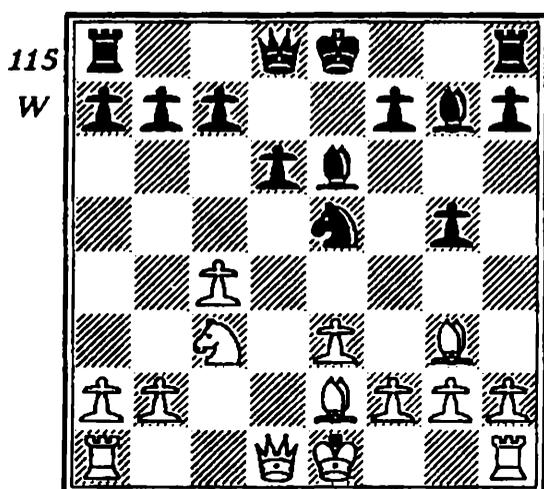
9 e3 d6

A critical moment. Almeida has to choose between three continuations: 10 c5, 10 h4 or 10 ♕e2. He chooses the weakest.

10 ♕e2?! ♕e6 (115)

Now Black has safe equality, and chances arise for him to gain the advantage.

11 ♖c1



If 11 ♖b3, Black simply replies 11 ... 0-0! with a good game. The negative side of 11 ♖c2 is demonstrated in chapter 3.

11 ... ♔d7
12 ♘e4

In Regedzinski - Bakonyi, Kecskemet 1927, White played 12 b3, which allowed Black to start a dangerous attack with 12 ... h5!

With the following moves White tries to work up some activity, but this turns out clearly in Black's favour.

12 ... h6
13 c5 ♔c6!

Just in time!

14 ♕xe5 ♕xe5
15 ♕f3 d5!

Now Black's advantage has taken distinct shape.

16 ♘c3 0-0-0
17 b4

If 17 0-0, the reply 17 ... h5 is unpleasant.

17 ... g4
18 ♕e2 d4!

This would also have

been the answer to 18 ♕xg4.

19 ♘b5 ♔xg2
20 ♔a4 g3!
21 ♕h5 gf+
0-1

Game No. 8
Dalko - Soria
corr. 1968/70

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e5
3 de ♘g4
4 ♕f4 g5
5 ♕d2

After this move, White has a wider choice of attacking possibilities than after 5 ♕g3.

5 ... ♘xe5
6 ♕c3

Fully in keeping with the position - White immediately sets his sights on the long diagonal. As shown in chapter 3, another favourable possibility is 6 ♘f3 ♕g7, and now either 7 ♘xe5 or 7 ♖c1.

6 ... ♕g7
7 e3 g4

White was threatening to gain a decisive advantage with 8 f4. If 7 ... ♖e7, then 8 ♕e2. With the move played, Black forestalls the threat but concedes a convenient post (f4) to a white knight.

8 ♘e2 d6
9 ♘f4 h5

A game Fuster - Bakonyi, Hungary 1951, went 9 ... Δ bc6 10 W c2 Q d7 11 Δ d2 W g5 12 Δ e4 W f5 13 0-0-0, with the better chances for White. With the text move Black chooses a different plan, which likewise fails to overcome his difficulties in view of the organic weaknesses of his pawn formation.

- 10 W c2 Δ a6
 11 Δ d2 Δ c5
 12 Δ e4 b6

12 ... Δ e6 is met by 13 0-0-0, while if 12 ... Q e6, White simply plays 13 Δ xc5 dc 14 Δ xe6. Therefore Black has to accept a further worsening of his pawn structure.

- 13 Δ xc5 bc
 14 Q d3 W f8

There is nothing better. 14 ... Q b7 would be answered by 15 Q e4.

- 15 Q f5 W h6

If 15 ... W g5, then 16 W e4.

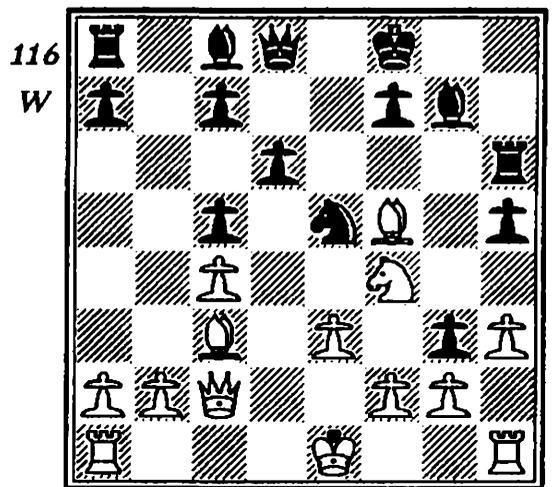
- 16 h3 g3 (116)

16 ... W g5 could be met by 17 Q xc8 W xc8 18 0-0-0. With the move chosen, Black tries to obtain at least *some* counterplay.

- 17 0-0!

Frustrating all possibilities of counter-attack, White threatens to open the f-file himself with decisive effect.

- 17 ... Q a6



- 18 b3 W g5

- 19 Δ d5

White commences the decisive attack.

- 19 ... c6

- 20 f4 W d8

- 21 fe cd

- 22 Q g6 f6

- 23 ef

Black's cause is hopeless. The remaining moves were:

- 23 ... Q h8

- 24 W f3 h4

- 25 W f5 d4

- 26 ed cd

- 27 Q d2 1-0

Game No. 9

Inkirov - Djukic

Bor 1983

- 1 d4 Δ f6

- 2 c4 e5

- 3 de Δ g4

- 4 Q f4 Δ c6

- 5 Δ f3 Q b4+

- 6 Δ c3

This critical move, so popular in the 1920s, is rarely seen today; the mo-

dern master doesn't like to spoil his own pawn formation. The fact that White thereby retains the gambit pawn is not of decisive importance, for he will need to be on the alert for a long time, fending off a variety of tactical strokes.

6 ... ♙xc3+
7 bc ♙e7
8 ♖d5 f6

In this variation White also has to be prepared to meet a different attack - 8 ... ♗a3 (see chapter 3).

9 ef ♘xf6
10 ♖d1

This recently fashionable move is not at all superior to the standard 10 ♖d3.

10 ... d6
11 e3 0-0
12 ♙e2

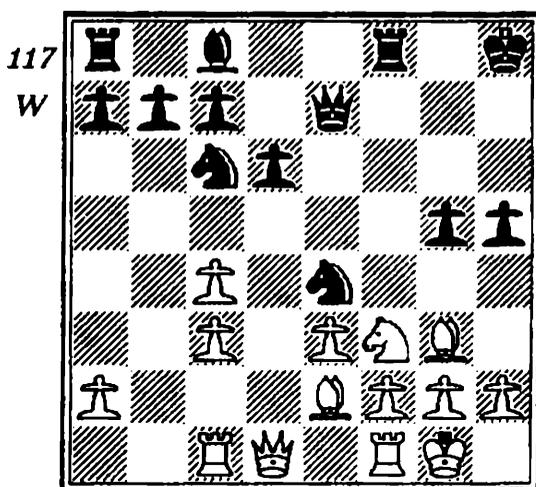
If 12 ♙d3, Black can continue with either 12 ... ♙g4 or 12 ... ♘e5.

12 ... ♘e4
13 ♖c1 ♖h8

The signal for the attack, which White ought to anticipate with the cautious 14 ♙g3 (see analysis in chapter 3).

14 0-0?! g5!
15 ♙g3 h5 (117)
16 ♙d3

After 16 h3 ♘xg3 17 fg ♗xe3+ 18 ♖h2 ♖g7, or 16 h4 g4 (16 ... ♘xg3 17 fg ♗xe3+ 18 ♖h2 ♙g4 is also good) 17 ♘d4 ♘xg3 18 fg ♗xe3+ 19



♖h2 ♙d7, Black has regained the gambit pawn and can set about exploiting White's queenside pawn weaknesses.

16 ... ♘c5!
17 h4

17 h3 is met by 17 ... ♙xh3, while in event of 17 ♘h4?! gh 18 ♗xh5+ ♖g8 19 ♙xh4 ♗g7 White obtains insufficient compensation for the sacrificed piece. He therefore has nothing better than the move actually played.

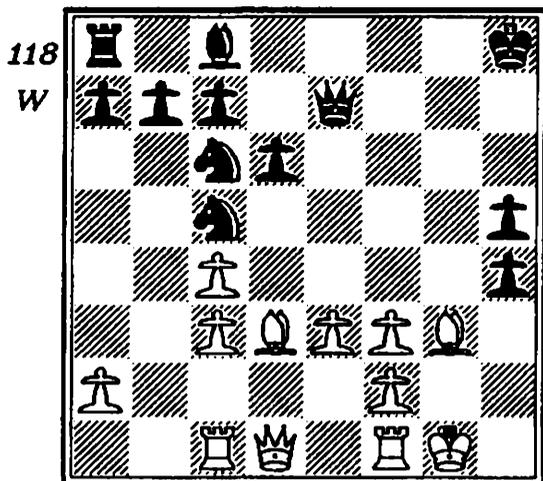
17 ... ♖xf3!

A magnificent exchange sacrifice! To be fair, though, we must point out an alternative method: 17 ... ♙g4 18 ♙e2 ♘e4 19 ♘xg5 ♘xg3 20 ♙xg4 ♘xf1 21 ♙e6 ♖g7! with substantial winning chances. Nimzowitsch once observed that in an organically healthy position there will be at least two continuations that bring success. This is a case in point.

18 gf

After 18 ♖xf3 ♕g4 19 ♖d5 ♕e6 20 ♖f3 ♗xd3 21 ♖xh5+ ♗g7, Black has a winning position.

18 ... gh (118)



19 ♕h2

Sahovic considers this the decisive mistake. He suggests instead 19 ♕f4, with the continuation 19 ... ♕h3 20 ♗h2! ♕xf1 21 ♕xf1 ♗e6 22 ♖d5! ♗xf4 23 ef ♖h7! 24 ♕d3 ♖h6, and the position remains unclear; or 19 ... ♕d7 20 ♖e1, with advantage to White. But this last verdict may be doubted, since after 20 ... ♖e6! no wholly satisfactory defence emerges for White. For example, 21 ♕h2 ♗xd3 22 ♖xd3 ♖h3; or 21 ♕f1 ♖g8+ 22 ♗h1 ♖g6 23 ♕h2 ♗e5; or finally, 21 ♗f1 ♖f8! 22 ♖e2 ♖h3+ 23 ♗e1 ♖xf3 - with serious trouble for White in all cases.

19 ... ♕h3
20 ♗h1 ♖g8!
21 ♖g1 ♖xg1+

22 ♖xg1

Or 22 ♕xg1 ♗xd3 23 ♖xd3 ♖g7 and wins.

22 ... ♗xd3

23 ♖d1 ♖f7!

24 ♕f4

If 24 f4, then 24 ... ♕g4.

24 ... ♗xf4

25 ef ♖xf4

26 ♖g6 ♖xf3+

27 ♗h2 ♖xd1

28 ♖f6+

The proverbial check before dying ...

28 ... ♖g8

0-1

Game No. 10

Rubinstein - Tartakower
Kissingen 1928

Notes by Nimzowitsch (N),
Tartakower (T), Rubinstein
(Ru) and Razuvayev (Ra)

1 d4 ♗f6

2 c4 e5

3 de ♗g4

(N:) In general this opening makes an unpleasant impression both on the spectator, whose response to the individual moves is purely emotional, and on the analyst, who endeavours by concentrated thought to disclose the underlying mechanism of the variation.

Black's first two moves say something like this: "The placing of the pawns on c4 and d4 meets the

needs of a closed game. Therefore if Black managed to give the position an open character, the pawn on c4 would at once be deprived of its meaning." (Compare our notes to the game Capablanca - Tartakower.) That, then, is what the Budapest Defence asserts. But let us boldly state that this assertion is naive! Such a sharp distinction between open and closed games simply does not exist. In any case, the position resulting from 2 ... e5? is *not* open but semi-closed. The whole variation smacks of violence, and if such variations were playable we should assuredly give up chess and switch to draughts; for in the latter, an ideally positional game, crudity and violence have no place.

4 Qf4

(Ru:) This is the method I prefer, but 4 e4 and 4 $\text{d}f3$ are just as good - and perhaps more aggressive.

4 ... Qb4+
 5 $\text{d}d2$ $\text{c}c6$
 6 $\text{d}f3$ f6

(Ra:) As is well known, Black can regain the gambit pawn with 6 ... $\text{W}e7$, but then after 7 a3 he has to agree to an exchange which is not to everyone's liking. This is why some players

prefer Grünfeld's move 6 ... f6. The play now acquires a sharpness somewhat reminiscent of the Danish Gambit.

7 ef $\text{W}xf6$
 8 g3

(Ru:) In the present situation I believe this is a novelty. As a result of this move, the whole variation will perhaps be seen in a new light. The old theoretical continuation here is 8 Qxc7 $\text{W}xb2$ 9 Qg3 , or 9 Qf4 $\text{d}d4$, etc.

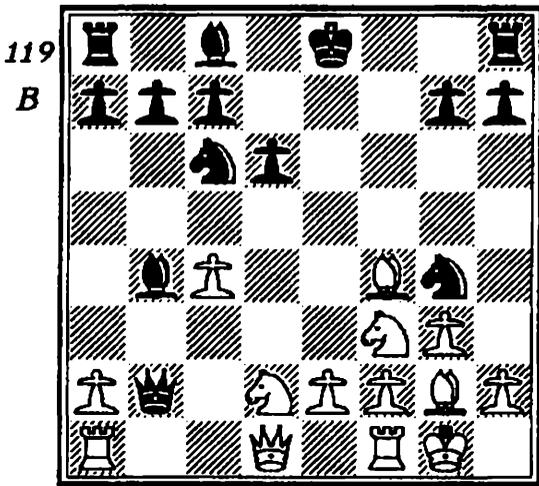
(T:) Introducing 'positional' themes even into the rugged Budapest Gambit!

The 'normal' variation - 8 Qxc7 $\text{W}xb2$ 9 Qf4! (9 Qg3 $\text{d}d4!!$) 9 ... 0-0 10 e3 $\text{d}d4$, etc. - contains many obscure points.

(Ra:) Modern theory considers 8 g3 the best move, and thanks to this very game the variation with 6 ... f6 is hardly seen any more.

8 ... $\text{W}xb2$
 9 Qg2 d6
 10 0-0 (119)
 10 ... 0-0?

(T:) With this routine, purely mechanical move, Black simply wastes a vital tempo that he needs for consolidating the rest of his pieces; he is also scarcely improving his king's position, allowing a



check on d5 in some variations.

He should have adapted himself to the wildness of the current position, and looked for a move more in keeping with it!

A suitable 'emergency' idea might be, for example, 10 ... ♕f5, provoking 11 e4, so as to reply 11 ... ♕d7 and castle in due course. Indeed, on the very next day, a game Weissberger - Donagan (in the Bavarian Championship, also held in Kissingen) continued 10 ... ♕f5 11 e4 ♕d7 12 h3 ♖ge5 13 ♕xe5 de 14 ♖b3 0-0-0 etc., and ended in a convincing win for Black on the 37th move!

Another useful idea in this position is 10 ... h6, preventing ♖g5 once and for all, and holding the counter-thrust ... g7 - g5 in reserve (for instance 11 h3 ♖f6 or 11 ♖b3 g5! 12 ♕c1 ♗g7 etc.).

11 ♖b3

(Ru:) This restricts the freedom of the bishop on b4, and threatens after a2 - a3 to exchange this bishop in circumstances unfavourable to Black.

(T:) With the concealed aim of encircling the enemy forces. Striking out with 11 ♖g5 would prove useless after 11 ... h6!

11 ... ♗f6

(T:) 11 ... h6 was still probably better.

12 ♖g5!

(Ru:) The aim of this move is to prevent the black bishop from occupying c3 after a2 - a3.

(T:) An extremely original idea: a seemingly unremarkable kingside manoeuvre (♖f3 - g5 - e4) serves not to attack the king but to further White's designs on the opposite wing (a3 and c5). Such co-ordination of movements doubtless occurs only rarely in practical play, particularly on a crowded board!

12 ... h6

13 ♖e4!

(T:) Not at all eager to check (13 ♕d5+ or 13 ♗d5+).

13 ... ♗f7

(T:) Black has to occupy the crucial d5-g8 diagonal, since after 13 ... ♗e7 14 a3! there would follow, for example: 14 ... ♕f5 (14 ... ♕a5? 15 ♖xa5 ♖xa5 16 ♗d5+

and 17 ♖xa5) 15 ♖d5+ ♕e6 16 ♖b5, or even more simply: 15 ab ♕xe4 16 f3!, and White wins material.

14 a3 ♕a5
 15 ♖xa5 ♖xa5
 16 h3 ♖e5
 17 c5!

(Ru:) A very important move! It attacks and shatters the opponent's position.

17 ... g5

(T:) This counter-blow was not calculated precisely enough. But even after the better 17 ... ♖g6 18 cd ♖xf4 19 gf, Black's position would already be shaken to its foundations.

(Ru:) The dire consequences of weakening the kingside will soon be apparent. But Black had no choice of defences. If, for example, 17 ... ♖g6 then 18 cd ♖xf4 19 gf, and Black cannot take the f-pawn.

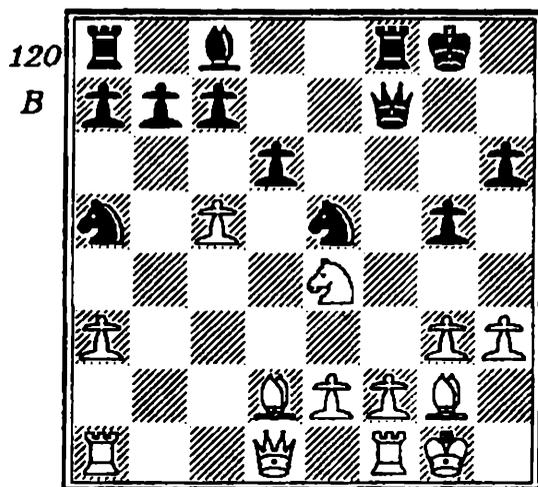
18 ♕d2! (120)

(Ru:) This move involves an exchange sacrifice, which Black however declines.

18 ... d5?

(T:) A second and this time fatal inaccuracy, allowing White to reap the rewards of his subtle strategy quickly and simply.

The main line here was the obvious 18 ... ♖b3, which would be perfectly



acceptable if the rook moved away (for instance 19 ♖b1 ♖xd2 20 ♖xd2 d5 21 ♖c3 c6), but would be proved inadequate by the brilliant sacrificial combination 19 ♕c3!! ♖xa1 20 cd!!

Still, it was only in this variation, compelling White to play for the highest stakes, that Black had any chance of fishing something out of the troubled waters.

(Ru:) Tartakower's sure positional sense told him that if he won the exchange with 18 ... ♖b3 19 cd ♖xa1, White's attack would be irresistible after 20 ♕c3! or even simply 20 ♖xa1. But the move played is also nothing like an adequate defence, since Black's king position is hopelessly weak.

(Ra:) Nor was 18 ... ♖ac4 any better, in view of 19 cd cd 20 ♕c3 d5 21 ♖d6! with an overwhelming attack.

19 ♖xg5!!

(T:) Smashing the black king's cover, which is the quickest way to settle matters.

Black had expected only 19 ♖c3 ♕e6!, or 19 ♕xa5 de 20 ♕xe4 ♕xh3 21 ♕d5 ♕e6 22 ♕xb7 ♖ad8 with counterplay.

19 ... hg
20 ♕xa5 ♕e6

(T:) 20 ... c6 21 ♖d4 ♖g6 22 ♕c3 ♖h7 was a little better, although even then White would prepare the ground for the final onslaught with 23 f4!

21 ♕c3 ♖c6

(T:) 21 ... ♖g6 22 ♖d2! would be equally dismal.

22 ♖d2!

(T:) Decisive. White has conducted the whole game in harmonious style, playing on his opponent's weak points and lack of piece co-ordination.

22 ... ♖f5

(T:) Of course 22 ... d4 would not save him either: 23 ♖xg5+ ♖h8 24 ♕xc6.

(Ru:) The black king cannot escape the direct attack; a swift finale ensues.

23 g4 ♖f4
24 ♕xd5!

(T:) Picking up a second pawn. Black cannot reply 24 ... ♖xd2 because of the intermediate check 25 ♕xe6+.

24 ... ♕xd5

25 ♖xd5+ ♖h7?

(T:) The final error, leading to mate. There was nothing for it but to play 25 ... ♖f7, and then after 26 e3 ♖f3 27 ♖xg5+ (pawn number three) 27 ... ♖f8, stoically await further events.

26 e3 ♖f3
27 ♖xg5 ♖xh3

(T:) or 27 ... ♖g8 28 ♖h5+ mate; or 27 ... ♖f7 28 ♖h5+ ♖g8 29 ♖h8+ mate; or 27 ... ♖f7 28 ♖h4+ ♖g6 29 ♖h5+ mate.

28 ♖g7 mate

Game No. 11

Browne - Speelman Taxco Interzonal 1985

Here is what Mikhail Tal wrote about this game in his report on the tournament (*Shakhmaty* No. 19, 1985):

"Speelman's play was very interesting psychologically. Taking into account that his opponent (six times US Champion - Browne always signs his annotations this way) is very fond of cogitating, the English grandmaster decided to give him the opportunity to do so - right from the first few moves - by choosing the Budapest Gambit, an opening encountered extremely rarely

in recent tournaments."

"Speelman's calculation paid off perfectly. By move 20, Browne already had less than 15 minutes left on his clock. And the struggle - of an unorthodox kind, too - was only just beginning. Accurately exploiting his opponent's confusion, Jon Speelman scored his first win."

1	d4	♗f6
2	c4	e5
3	de	♗g4
4	♕f4	♗c6
5	♗f3	♕b4+
6	♗bd2	♖e7
7	a3	♗gxe5
8	♗xe5	♗xe5
9	e3	♕xd2+
10	♖xd2	d6
11	♕e2	

In his notes to the game, Speelman says he was afraid of 11 c5 dc 12 ♖d5. As we show in chapter 3, Black has adequate counter-chances in that variation too.

White achieves nothing with 11 ♖c3, on account of 11 ... b6. Browne chooses a solid continuation, which according to many authorities ensures White a slight edge.

11	...	b6
12	e4	

Anticipating the development of Black's bishop on b7, Browne restricts its

activity in advance. From this moment, the game acquires independent significance.

12	...	♕b7
----	-----	-----

After 12 ... ♗g6 13 ♕g3 ♖xe4 14 0-0 ♗h4 15 ♕xh4 ♖xh4 16 ♕f3, White has an excellent attacking position in return for the pawn.

13	f3	0-0-0!?
----	----	---------

A little risky, but then (as the Russian saying has it), if you don't take the risks you won't drink the champagne.

14	0-0-0!?	
----	---------	--

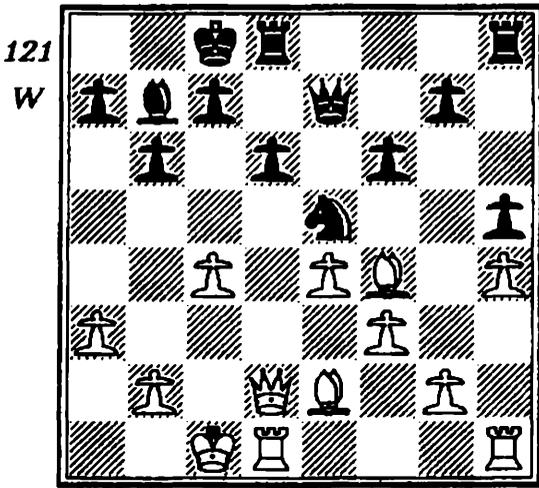
Speelman's strategy is starting to bear fruit. Of course, kingside castling would have allowed Black to start active operations before his opponent; but instead of the move played, an immediate bayonet attack deserved serious consideration: 14 a4! a5 15 b4 ♗c6 (15 ... ab 16 a5!) 16 ba ♗xa5 17 ♖b2 ♕a6 18 0-0! with good prospects.

14	...	f6
15	h4	h5 (121)

Continuing the same policy. Speelman observes that 15 ... g6 is more cautious, but the move played was more efficient from the psychological viewpoint - it made Browne have a good think.

16	♖he1!?	
----	--------	--

This rook was indispen-



sable on the kingside, to restrain Black's attacking ambitions. Browne pointed out himself (after the game!) that 16 ♖b1 was stronger; if then 16 ... ♖b8 17 b4 c5, White has 18 ♗c3, followed by doubling rooks on the d-file; or if 16 ... ♗dg8, then 17 b4 g5 18 hg fg 19 ♕e3, preparing c4 - c5. All this is true, but a better answer to 16 ♖b1 is 16 ... ♗hg8, as in the actual game. If then 17 b4, Black plays 17 ... g5 18 hg fg 19 ♕e3 h4, with about equal chances.

From this point on, White's game begins to go downhill.

16 ... ♗hg8
17 ♗c3 g5
18 hg fg
19 ♕h2

19 ♕e3 can be answered by 19 ... g4 20 b4 gf 21 gf c5!, with a promising position.

19 ... g4
20 f4 ♖d7

The consequences of 20 ... ♖g6 21 g3 are unclear.

21 ♕d3 h4
22 b4

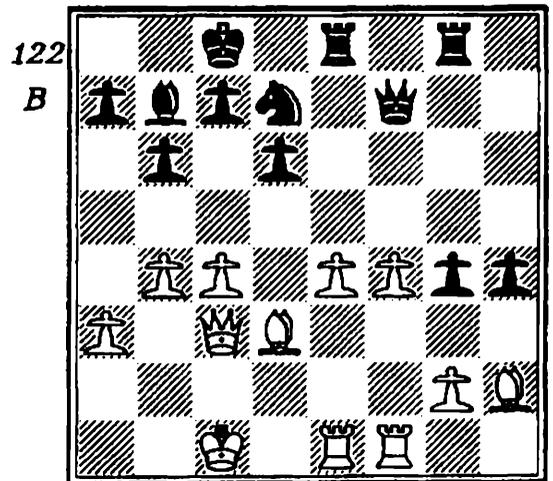
22 ♕c2 has been recommended here; Black could continue 22 ... ♖c5 23 e5 ♗g7, or 23 ... ♕xg2 24 ed ♗g7, maintaining the advantage.

22 ... ♗f7
23 ♗f1

23 g3 h3 24 ♕g1 was a little better; Black would then develop his initiative with 24 ... ♗h8 25 ♗d2 ♗de8.

23 ... ♗de8
24 ♗de1 (122)

Now Black starts a general offensive.



24 ... g3
25 ♕g1 h3!
26 gh g2
27 ♗f3

If 27 ♗f2, then 27 ... ♗g3.

27 ... ♖e5

The 'Budapest knight' returns to its standard post with decisive effect.

28 ♗f2 ♖xd3+

29 ♖xd3 ♖f6

Total domination!

30 ♖b1

If 30 e5, then 30 ... de 31 fe ♖h4.

30 ... ♖h4

At this point English Grandmaster William Watson discovered a beautiful forced win for Black, involving a queen sacrifice: 30 ... ♖f5! 31 ef ♖xe1+ 32 ♖b2 ♖xg1 33 f6 ♖e1 34 ♖xg2 ♖xg2+ 35 ♖b3 ♖e4 36 ♖c3 ♖c2+ 37 ♖xc2 ♖e3+ 38 ♖a4 ♖xc2 39 f7 ♖cc3 and wins.

31 e5

If 31 ♖e3, then 31 ... ♖g3!

31 ... de

32 fe ♖g3

33 ♖f5+

33 ♖c2 at once was a little better.

33 ... ♖b8

34 ♖c2 ♖xh3

35 ♖b2 a6

A simpler method was 35 ... ♖xa3 36 ♖fe2 a5! 37 ♖e3 ♖xe3 38 ♖xe3 ♖h1 39 ♖e1 ♖xe5.

36 ♖d2 ♖c8

37 ♖f2 ♖d8

38 e6 ♖xe6

39 ♖f6 ♖xc4

40 ♖xc4 ♖d2+

41 ♖b1 ♖b3+

0-1

Black mates after 42 ♖a1 ♖xa3+ 43 ♖b1 ♖a1+! 44 ♖xa1 ♖a3+ 45 ♖b1 ♖b2 or wins the queen after 42 ♖c1 ♖c3+.

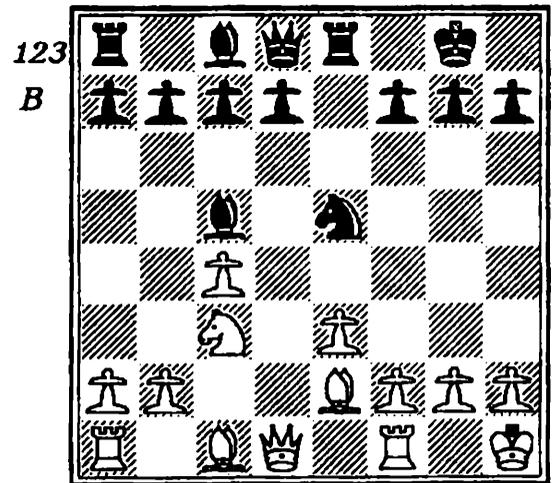
Game No. 12

Spassky - Illescas

Linares 1990

- | | | |
|----|-----------|-------|
| 1 | d4 | ♗f6 |
| 2 | c4 | e5 |
| 3 | de | ♗g4 |
| 4 | ♗f3 | ♖c5 |
| 5 | e3 | ♗c6 |
| 6 | ♖e2 | ♗gxe5 |
| 7 | ♗xe5 | ♗xe5 |
| 8 | ♗c3 | 0-0 |
| 9 | 0-0 | ♖e8 |
| 10 | ♖h1 (123) | |

Spassky loses no time fianchettoing his queen's bishop; he immediately starts operations on the kingside.



10 ... a5?

Carelessly played - Black doesn't sense the danger. This game is a good example of how just one seemingly normal move can spoil a position irrevocably.

The correct reply is 10 ... d6 (see chapter 4).

11 f4 ♗c6

If the knights retreats to g6, White can develop the

initiative with 12 f5 ♖e5 13 f6.

12 ♕d3 d6

The pawn is invulnerable in view of 12 ... ♕xe3 13 ♕xe3! (but not 13 ♕xh7+ ♖xh7 14 ♖d3+ ♖g8 15 ♕xe3 ♖b4, with equal chances) 13 ... ♖xe3 14 ♖d5 ♖e8 15 ♖h5 g6 16 ♖h6, with dangerous threats.

13 ♖h5 h6
 14 ♖f3 ♖b4
 15 ♕e4 c6
 16 ♖g3 ♖f6
 17 ♕d2

White's attack proceeds unimpeded.

17 ... ♖a6
 18 a3 ♖f8

There is evidently nothing better for Black in this dismal position.

19 ♕d3 ♕a7
 20 ♖e2

20 ♖e4 was also possible, but the move played is a simpler way to reach a conclusion.

20 ... ♖c5
 21 ♕c3

Black's position is completely hopeless. The remaining moves were:

21 ... ♖xc3
 22 ♖xc3 ♖xd3
 23 ♖f1 ♕xe3
 24 ♖e2 ♖xf4
 25 ♖d1 1-0

Spassky conducted the whole attack in exemplary fashion.

Game No. 13
 Odessky - Kramnik
 USSR 1987

1 d4 ♖f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♖g4
 4 ♖f3 ♕c5
 5 e3 ♖c6
 6 ♕e2 ♖gxe5
 7 ♖xe5 ♖xe5
 8 ♖c3 0-0
 9 0-0 ♖e8
 10 b3 a5
 11 ♕b2

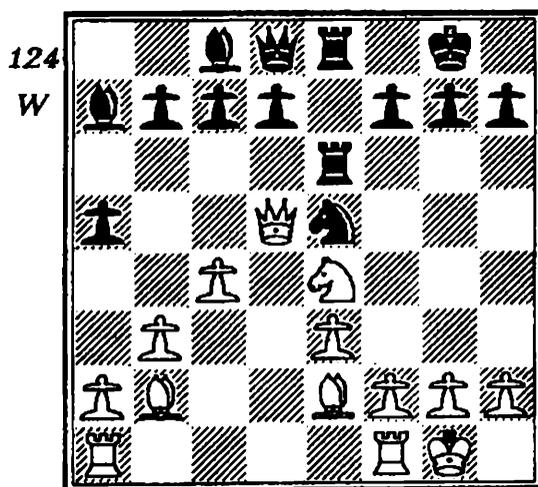
A good answer to 11 ♖e4 is 11 ... ♕f8.

11 ... ♖a6
 12 ♖d5 ♕a7

Black can also play 12 ... ♖e7 13 ♖e4 ♕a7, and if 14 c5, then 14 ... ♖g6 15 ♖ac1 ♖c6! with strong threats.

13 ♖e4 ♖ae6 (124)

13 ... ♖h6 is at least as good; the reply 14 ♕xe5 is dangerous for White on account of 14 ... c6 15 ♕f6 gf 16 ♖d3 f5 17 ♖d6 ♕b8 18 c5 ♖h4 19 h3 ♖g6, with a clear advantage.



14 ♖g3

In Gurevich - Korchnoi, Madrid 1988, White played 14 c5!?, to which a reply worth considering was 14 ... d6 15 cd c6 16 ♖d1 f5 17 ♙xe5 ♞xe5 18 ♗c3 ♙b8, or 18 ... ♙c5, with good prospects.

The main continuation 14 ♖xa5 (see chapter 4) similarly allows Black's pieces to become very active.

14 ... d6
15 ♖xa5 ♙b6
16 ♖c3 ♞h6

Black has obtained a powerful attacking position in return for the pawn sacrifice.

17 ♞fd1 ♖h4
18 ♗f1 ♞g6
19 b4

White tries to shut out the powerful bishop on b6, but this doesn't stop Black from concluding his attack successfully. There is already no defence to the threats.

19 ... ♙g4
20 ♙xg4 ♞xg4

20 ... ♗xg4 is also adequate.

21 c5

An elegant finale now ensues:

21 ... ♗f3+
22 ♖h1 ♖xf2
23 ♗g3 ♗xh2
24 ♖e1 ♗f3!!
0-1

Game No. 14

Gavrilov - Berdichevsky
Moscow 1989

1 d4 ♗f6
2 c4 e5
3 de ♗g4
4 ♗f3 ♙c5
5 e3 ♗c6
6 ♙e2 0-0
7 0-0 ♞e8
8 ♗c3 ♗gxe5
9 ♗xe5 ♗xe5
10 a3 a5
11 ♞b1

At any price, White wants to drive the enemy bishop away from its post and gain space. But here again, Black has adequate counter-measures at his disposal.

11 ... b6?!

This move looks dubious. In chapter 4 we indicate the alternatives: 11 ... ♙f8 and 11 ... d6.

12 ♖c2?

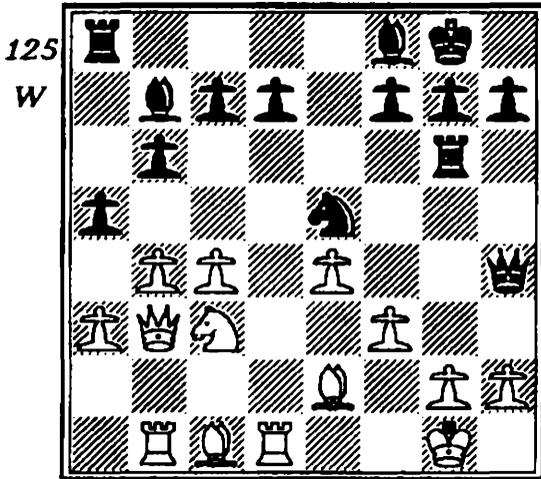
White has not sized up the situation. He should have continued 12 b4 ♙f8 13 f4 ♗g6 (13 ... ♗c6 14 b5) 14 ♙f3 ♞a7 15 e4, with the better prospects. The move played permits Black to co-ordinate his pieces properly.

12 ... ♙b7
13 b4 ♙f8
14 e4 ♞e6!
15 ♞d1

If 15 f4, then 15 ... ♗c6,

threatening both 16 ... ab and 16 ... ♖d4. The move White plays averts this possibility, but now Black seizes the initiative with a clever manoeuvre.

- 15 ... ♖c6!
 16 ♙b3 ♙h4
 17 f3 ♖g6 (125)



Storm-clouds are gathering above the white king's residence ...

- 18 ♖b5?! ab
 19 ab c5!

Very good! Now Black's attack can continue.

- 20 ♕d2 ♙h3!
 21 g3 cb
 22 ♕f4 ♕c5+
 23 ♙h1 ♖g4!

White is compelled to accept the knight sacrifice, whereupon Black concludes the game by force.

- 24 fg ♕xe4+
 25 ♕f3 ♖a2
 26 ♖d2 ♖xd2
 27 ♕xd2 ♖f6!
 28 ♕f4 ♖xf4!
 0-1

Mate is unavoidable.

Game No. 15
 Yrjola - Liew
 Dubai Olympiad 1986

- 1 d4 ♖f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♖g4
 4 ♖f3 ♕c5
 5 e3 ♖c6
 6 a3

This move does appear rather odd. It 'deprives' the black pieces of the b4 square (where they were not intending to go), 'prepares' the b2 - b4 break (which cannot be carried out), and for good measure actually compels the answer 6 ... a5, which is useful to Black in any case.

- 6 ... a5
 7 b3 0-0
 8 ♕b2?!

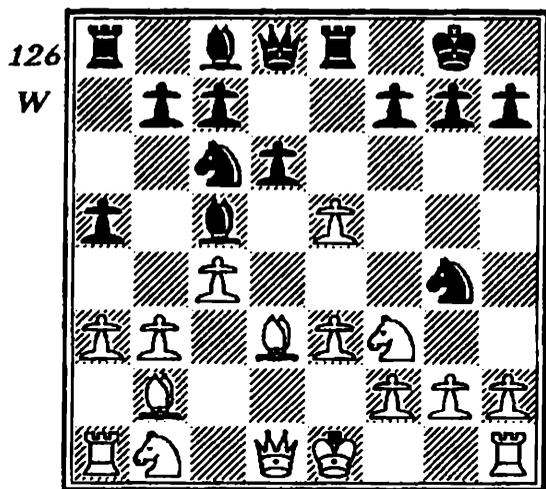
As shown in chapter 4, the best continuation here is 8 ♖c3.

- 8 ... ♖e8
 9 ♕d3 d6!? (126)

As our analysis indicated, 9 ... ♖cxe5 is also good. But the move Black plays is more interesting; he has conceived the idea of a piece sacrifice.

- 10 ed?

A very risky decision. But then, White didn't perceive the scale of the catastrophe because the following sacrifice was played in this game for the first time.



10 0-0 is likewise disadvantageous on account of de 11 h3 e4!, and if then 10 h3 ♖gxe5 11 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 12 ♕e2, as recommended in the notes to the game, Black has 12 ... ♜g5!, forcing a further weakening of White's position.

White's best course is 10 ♜c2 h6 11 ♗c3 ♗cxe5 12 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 13 0-0-0, leading to a sharp struggle with mutual chances; Lebeonian - Nadanian, Erevan 1989.

- 10 ... ♗xf2!
 11 ♜xf2 ♖xe3
 12 ♜f1 ♗g4
 13 ♕e2

13 ♕c1 could be met by 13 ... ♖xf3+ 14 gf ♜h4, or the even more convincing 14 ... ♜f6!

- 13 ... ♗xf3
 14 ♕xf3 ♜h4
 15 ♖a2

If 15 ♕c1, Black decides the game with 15 ... ♖d3! 16 ♜e1 ♖xf3+ 17 gf ♜h3+.

- 15 ... ♖ae8

15 ... ♖d3, on the lines of the last note, was simpler; but the final attack is highly attractive:

- 16 ♕c3 cd
 17 g3 ♜h3+
 18 ♕g2 ♜f5+
 19 ♖f2 ♜xf2+!!
 20 ♜xf2 ♖d3+
 0-1

Game No. 16
Stohl - Trapl
Namestrova 1987

- 1 d4 ♗f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♗e4

Many players take a sceptical view of this move, hence from a practical standpoint it is perhaps more dangerous for White than the usual 3 ... ♗g4.

- 4 ♜c2 ♗b4+
 5 ♗d2 d5
 6 ♗f3!?

A new move, first used in the present game. The continuations 6 ed and 6 e3 allow Black good chances after the reply 6 ... ♕f5 - see chapter 5.

- 6 ... ♗c6

In our view 6 ... ♕f5 was again more promising, and if 7 ♜b3 ♗c6 8 cd ♗c5 9 ♜c4 b5 10 ♜f4 (with a clear plus for White according to Trapl), then 10 ... ♜xd5 11 ♜xf5 ♗e4! and Black's threats are difficult to

meet. For example, 12 a3
 ♖d8 13 ab ♗xb4 14 ♖b1 (14
 ♖xa7 ♗c5) 14 ... ♗c4!

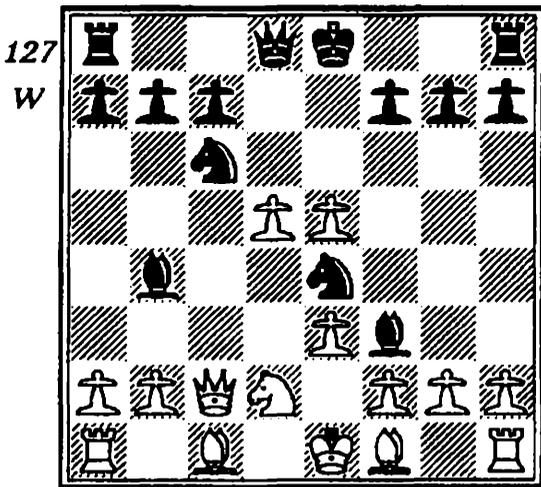
7 e3 ♕g4

7 ... ♕f5 8 ♕d3 would
 transpose into a game Milic
 - Möhring, in which the
 chances were about equal;
 see chapter 5, variation B2,
 note to Black's 7th move.

8 cd

According to John Don-
 aldson, 8 ♕e2 ♕xd2+ 9 ♕xd2
 ♗xd2 10 ♗xd2 dc leads to
 equality.

8 ... ♕xf3 (127)



9 dc?

An ill-considered move,
 allowing Black to begin a
 powerful attack. All anno-
 tators agree that White had
 to continue 9 gf ♗xd2 10
 ♕xd2 (again 10 dc? is bad,
 on account of 10 ... ♗b3+ 11
 ♖e2 ♗xa1 12 ♗a4 0-0 13 cb
 ♖b8 14 ♗xb4 ♗d5 with a
 clear plus) 10 ... ♗xd5 11
 ♕xb4 ♗xb4 12 ♗a4+ ♗c6 13
 ♕g2. Plachetka assesses
 this position as advanta-
 geous to White, but after

13 ... 0-0 14 0-0 ♗xe5 15 f4
 ♗f3+ 16 ♖h1 ♗h5 17 h3 ♗h4
 the position remains
 roughly equal (Donaldson).

9 ... ♗h4!!

Pretty and unexpected!

10 g3

10 gf would be met by 10
 ... ♗xf2+ 11 ♖d1 ♗xd2 12
 ♕xd2 0-0-0, with a decisive
 advantage.

10 ... ♗xg3

11 fg

The alternatives 11 cb
 ♗xh1 12 ba ♗+ ♕xa8, and 11
 hg ♗xh1 12 cb ♕xd2+ 13
 ♕xd2 ♖d8, are hopeless for
 White.

11 ... ♗h6

12 ♕b5

If 12 ♖f2, then 12 ... ♕xh1
 13 cb ♗xh2+ 14 ♖e1 ♕xd2+.

(Ed: 12 ♗b3 was played in
 Finegold - Voekler, Gron-
 ingen 1990, after which 12 ...
 ♕xd2+ 13 ♕xd2 ♕xh1 14 c6
 ♖b8 is the critical varia-
 tion.)

12 ... ♗xe3+

13 ♖f1 0-0

14 ♗xf3 ♗xf3+

15 ♖g1 ♕a5!?

Black may also play 15 ...
 ♗d5 16 ♗e2 ♕c5+ 17 ♕e3
 ♕xe3+ 18 ♗xe3 ♗xb5 19 ♗c3
 ♗xc6, with a clear advan-
 tage in the endgame.

16 h3 ♗xg3+

17 ♗g2 ♗e1+

18 ♗f1 ♗g3+

19 ♗g2 ♗xe5

20 ♗e2

Black similarly has a won position after 20 Qe2 Qb6+ 21 Qf1 .

- 20 ... Qb6+
- 21 Qg2 Qd5+
- 22 Qh2 Qae8
- 23 Qc4 Qe5+
- 24 Qg2 Qe6
- 25 Qd1 Qg6+
- 26 Qh1 Qh5
- 27 Qd3

27 Qb3 would be answered by 27 ... Qh4 .

- 27 ... Qd6
- 0-1

Game No. 17
Smyslov - Steiner
Groningen 1946
 Notes by Smyslov

- 1 d4 Qf6
- 2 c4 e5
- 3 de Qe4

3 ... Qg4 is played more often. After the text move, White develops freely while attempting to retain the gambit pawn.

- 4 Qf3

Another possibility is 4 a3.

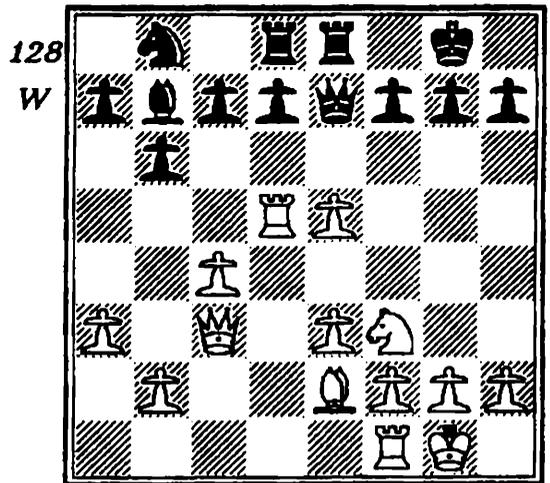
- 4 ... Qb4+
- 5 Qd2 Qxd2
- 6 Qbxd2 Qc6
- 7 a3 Qxd2+

(*Authors' note:* this is a crucial moment in the game. As we show in chapter 5, it is only with 7 ... Qf8! that Black retains good prospects.)

- 8 Qxd2 Qe7
- 9 Qc3 0-0
- 10 Qd1 Qe8
- 11 Qd5!

With the rook here White's position seems over-extended, but in return the strong pawn on e5 is preserved. Subsequently this pawn becomes the object of a lively struggle, in which White has the initiative.

- 11 ... b6
- 12 e3 Qb7
- 13 Qe2 Qad8
- 14 0-0 Qb8! (128)



- 15 Qc1!

Bold, but logical! Not shrinking from an exchange sacrifice, White keeps hold of the key to the position - the pawn on e5.

On 15 Qd2 , Black equalises with 15 ... Qxf3 16 Qxf3 Qxe5 .

- 15 ... Qxd5
- 16 cd d6

The alternative 16 ... c5 leads to complex play. After 17 Qb5 a6 18 d6 Qe6 19

Qc4 ♖f5 20 Qd5 ♘c6 21 Qxc6 dc 22 h3! Black has queenside pawn weaknesses which hinder him in his struggle against the white pawns.

- 17 Qb5 ♖f8
 18 e4! a6
 19 Qd3 de

After this move, it is hard to find a defence for Black. His knight is out of play, and the pawn on c7 is weak.

19 ... ♖fe8 was worth considering. After 20 e6 fe 21 de c5 22 Qc4, White would still have a complex task ahead of him.

- 20 ♘xe5 ♖d6

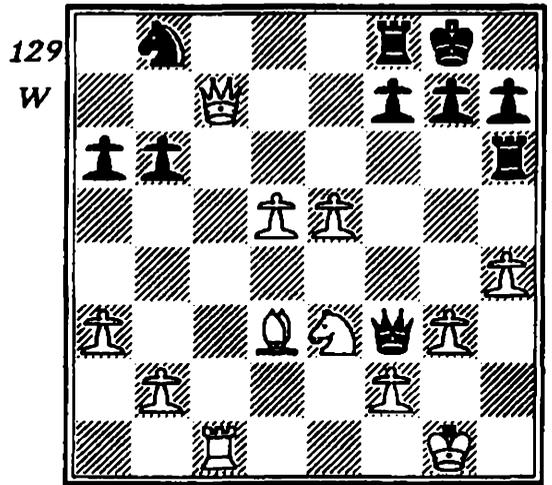
Black transfers his rook to the kingside, which merely hastens defeat. A more stubborn move seems to be 20 ... f6, although even then White maintains the advantage with 21 ♘g4 (aiming to manoeuvre the knight to f5).

- 21 ♘c4 ♖h6
 22 ♘e3 ♖h4
 23 ♖xc7

With the win of a second pawn, White attains a decisive superiority. Black's disjointed attacking moves are easily parried, and White quickly assumes the offensive himself.

- 23 ... ♖f6
 24 g3 ♖h5
 25 e5 ♖h6

- 26 h4 ♖f3 (129)



- 27 ♖c4!

The concluding manoeuvre. The rook swings across to the kingside, where the black queen and rook are entangled. There follows an energetic finale:

- 27 ... b5
 28 ♖f4 ♖h5
 29 ♘g4 ♖g6
 30 Qxg6 ♖xg6
 31 e6 ♖b1+
 32 ♖h2 f5
 33 e7 ♖e8
 34 ♖d8 1-0

Game No. 18
 Alekhine - Tartakower
 London 1932
 Notes by Alekhine

- 1 d4 ♘f6
 2 c4 e5
 3 de ♘e4

This is less usual, but not better, than 3 ... ♘g4, against which my games have left me with pleasant memories.

- 4 ♘d2 ♘c5

If 4 ... ♖b4, then 5 ♘f3 followed by a2 - a3, to secure the advantage of the bishop pair.

5	♘gf3	♘c6
6	g3	♔e7
7	♕g2	g6
8	♘b1!	

This move, though astonishing at first sight, is in fact perfectly logical. Once Black has clearly revealed his intention to develop his bishop on g7, White no longer needs to reckon with any action on the e1 - a5 diagonal. Therefore he has no reason to refrain from bringing his knight to the dominating square d5.

8	...	♘xe5
9	O-O	♘xf3+
10	ef	♕g7
11	♖e1	♘e6
12	♘c3	O-O
13	♘d5	♔d8
14	f4	c6

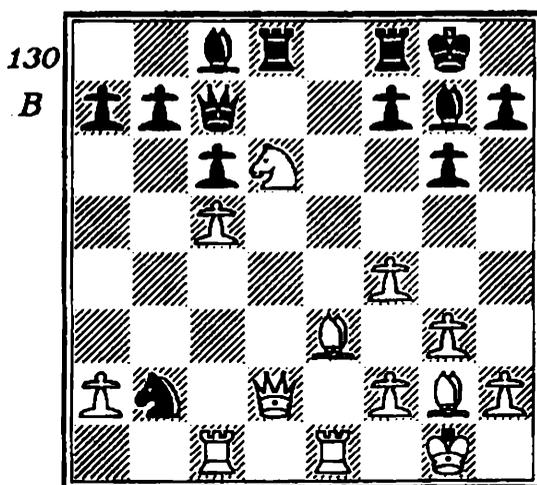
Whether he likes it or not, Black has to drive the white knight back, thereby creating a dangerous weakness on d6. The immediate 14 ... d6 was too risky in view of the temporary pawn sacrifice 15 f5.

15	♘c3	d6
16	♕e3	♔c7
17	♖c1	♕d7
18	♔d2	♖ad8
19	♖ed1	♕c8
20	♘e4	♘c5

This sortie will be refuted by the combination starting with White's 24th move.

However, given the weakness of the d-pawn, Black's game was very difficult in any case. For example 20 ... d5 would be unsatisfactory because of 21 cd ♖xd5 22 ♘f6+ and 23 ♕xd5, winning the exchange. Or if 20 ... c5, then 21 f5! gf 22 ♘c3 ♘d4 23 ♘d5 ♔b8 24 ♕g5, with advantage to White. After the relatively best 20 ... b6, White could easily increase his space advantage with 21 b4.

21	♘xd6!	♘a4
22	c5	♘xb2
23	♖e1 (130)	



23 ... b5

This retort, the logical consequence of Black's last three moves, will prove inadequate. But there was no longer any way for Black to save himself.

24 cb!

An unexpected but not very complicated combination. The only difficulty lay in the need to foresee this possibility some moves earlier, at the point where White played 21 ♞xd6 .

24 ... ♜xd6
 25 ♜xd6 ♞xd6
 26 ba ♞b7
 27 ♞c5 ♞dd8
 28 ♞xf8 ♞xf8

29 ♞xc6 ♞xc6
 30 ♞xc6 ♞a8

Black's last few moves have been forced, and realising the hopelessness of his position he prefers a quick end. After the alternative 30 ... ♞d4 White would also win at once, with 31 ♞d6 .

31 ♞b6 ♞xa7
 32 ♞b8 mate.

Index of Variations

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e5

Chapter 1: 3 de (3 e4; 3 ♙g5; 3 ♘f3; 3 d5; 3 e3)	11
3 ... ♘g4	
A 4 e6	13
B 4 ♜d5	14
C 4 ♜d4	16
C1 4 ... h5	16
C2 4 ... d6	18
Chapter 2: 3 de ♘g4 4 e4	21
A 4 ... d6	21
B 4 ... h5	23
C 4 ... ♘xe5 5 f4	24
C1 5 ... ♘ec6	26
C11 6 a3	26
C111 6 ... a5	26
C112 6 ... d6	28
C12 6 ♘f3	29
C13 6 ♙e3	30
C131 6 ... ♜e7	32
C132 6 ... ♜h4+	33
C2 5 ... ♘g6	34
C21 6 ♙e3	35
C22 6 ♘f3 ♙b4+ 7 ♘c3	37
C221 7 ... d6	37
C222 7 ... ♜f6	38
Chapter 3: 3 de ♘g4 4 ♙f4	40
A 4 ... g5	41
A1 5 ♙g3	41
A2 5 ♙d2	44
B 4 ... ♘c6 5 ♘f3 ♙b4+	48

B1 6 ♖c3 ♜e7 7 ♜d5 ♙xc3+ 8 bc	49
B11 8 ... ♜a3	51
B12 8 ... f6 9 ef ♗xf6	55
B121 10 ♜d1	55
B122 10 ♜d3	56
B2 6 ♗bd2 ♜e7	59
B21 7 e3	60
B22 7 a3 ♗gxe5 8 ♗xe5 ♗xe5	
9 e3 ♙xd2+ 10 ♜xd2 d6	62
B221 11 ♖c1	63
B222 11 ♙e2	65
Chapter 4: 3 de ♗g4 4 ♗f3 ♗c6 5 e3 ♙c5	68
A 6 ♙e2 ♗gxe5	73
A1 7 0-0	73
A2 7 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 8 0-0	76
A21 8 ... d6	77
A22 8 ... 0-0	79
B 6 a3 a5	83
B1 7 ♗c3	84
B2 7 b3	85
Chapter 5: 3 de ♗e4	89
A 4 ♗c3	90
B 4 ♜c2	91
B1 4 ... d5	92
B2 4 ... ♙b4+	94
C 4 ♗f3 ♙b4+	95
Chapter 6: 3 de ♗e4 4 ♗f3 ♗c6	98
A 5 ♗bd2	99
A1 5 ... ♙b4	99
A2 5 ... ♗c5	101
A21 6 g3 d6 7 ed	102
A211 7 ... ♙xd6	103
A212 7 ... ♜xd6	104
A22 6 a3	105
B 5 a3 d6	107
B1 6 ed	107
B2 6 ♜c2	109

Illustrative Games

1	Helmar - Krejcik	111
2	Capablanca - Tartakower	112
3	Gilg - Vajda	116
4	Rudakovsky - Ratner	118
5	Alekhine - Seitz	119
6	Alekhine - Rabinovich	120
7	Almeida - Rossiter	121
8	Dalko - Soria	122
9	Inkiov - Djukic	123
10	Rubinstein - Tartakower	125
11	Browne - Speelman	129
12	Spassky - Illescas	132
13	Odessky - Kramnik	133
14	Gavrilov - Berdichevsky	134
15	Yrjola - Liew	135
16	Stohl - Trapl	136
17	Smyslov - Steiner	138
18	Alekhine - Tartakower	139



THE BUDAPEST FOR THE TOURNAMENT PLAYER

In this dynamic counter-attacking opening Black offers his opponent a pawn as early as the second move! In return, he strives for active piece play and possibilities for an early assault on White's king. Against well-prepared opponents the Budapest Gambit is a tricky and aggressive opening which suffers little in comparison to the normal Queen's Gambit and Indian defences; against lesser opposition it is an ideal surprise weapon, intensifying the struggle from the outset and often leading to spectacular early finishes. Whatever your standard of play, this up-to-date guide will help you to understand the critical ideas of each variation, many of which have undergone a fundamental revision in the last few years.

Mikhail Tseitlin has twice won the Moscow Championship and attained Grandmaster status in 1987. Igor Glaskov is a Soviet candidate master and renowned theoretician who specializes in gambit play.

Other titles in this series

The Alekhine for the Tournament Player

Lev Alburt and Eric Schiller

The Najdorf for the Tournament Player

John Nunn

The Ruy Lopez for the Tournament Player

Gary Lane

For a complete list of these
and other Batsford chess books
please write to:

B.T. Batsford Ltd
4 Fitzhardinge Street
London W1H 0AH

ISBN 0-



9 78071.